



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

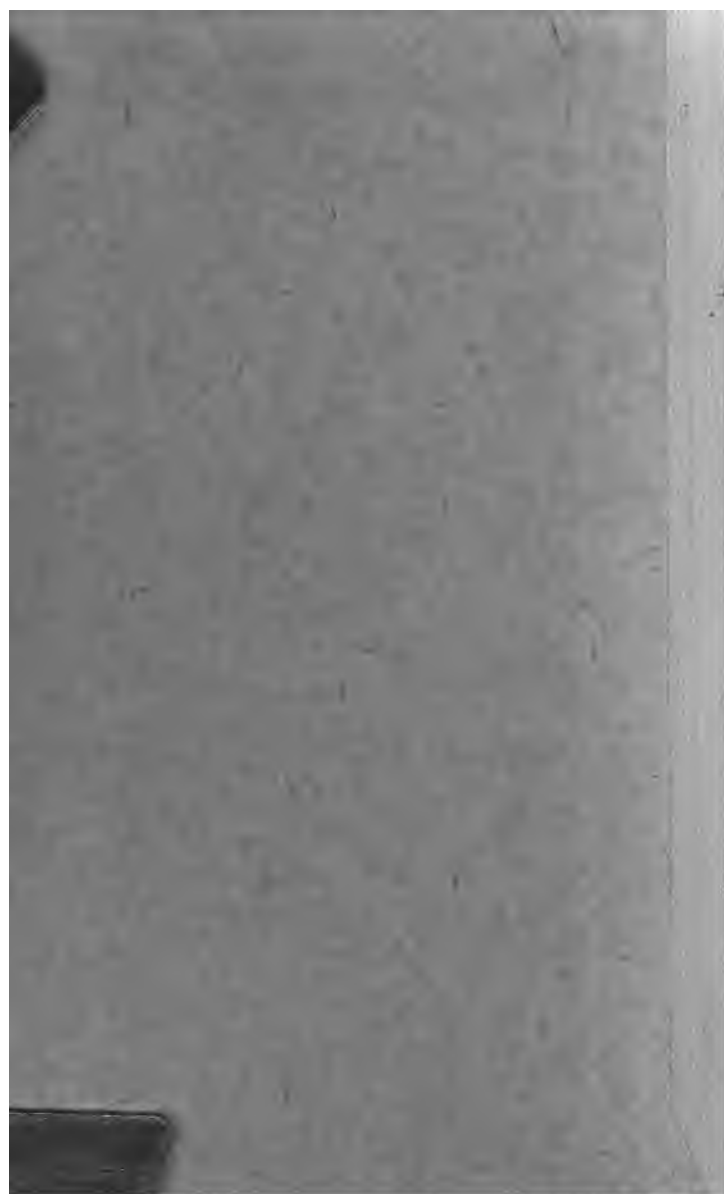
### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES



3 3433 07439466 3



Altinson  
P.C.







# 7 GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION

*Exercises for Writing*

CONNECTED GREEK PROSE

WITH

INTRODUCTORY NOTES ON SYNTAX AND IDIOM  
AND RULES FOR CASES AND ACCENT

BY

FRANCIS G. ALLINSON

A.B. (HARVARD), PH.D. (JOHNS HOPKINS)

HEAD MASTER OF CLASSICS IN THE UNIVERSITY SCHOOL FOR BOYS  
BALTIMORE

*καὶ ξυνελὸν λέγοι ἂν τις τὴν Ἑλλάδα τῆς οἰκουμένης παιδεύειν εἶναι*

UNIVERSITY  
OF CHICAGO  
LIBRARY

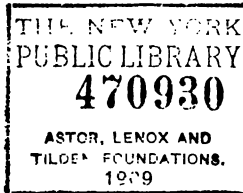
**Boston**

ALLYN AND BACON

1890

7.11.





*Copyright, 1889,*  
BY ALLYN AND BACON.

JOHN WILSON  
AND SON  
CAMBRIDGE

University Press :  
JOHN WILSON AND SON, CAMBRIDGE.

## P R E F A C E.

---

THIS book has grown out of the author's personal experience in the class-room. It is for use in writing *connected* Greek prose, and is intended to be used weekly, or semi-weekly, parallel with the daily recitations in reading Xenophon and other authors.

There is pre-supposed on the part of the student a knowledge of the forms of the language and of the principal parts of the more common irregular verbs. If he *knows* these, he will *not have to refer to any other book* in preparing his exercises. References are given, however, throughout the introductory matter to the grammars of Goodwin and of Hadley & Allen, and from them some of the examples have been taken without further acknowledgment.

The 'Notes' on idiomatic uses of article, participle, etc., will, it is hoped, be useful to all students. The introduction to Syntax includes the most essential peculiarities in the use of the Moods and Tenses. The study of this part may, at the discretion of the teacher, be postponed for use in *connection with Part II.* of the exercises. Attention is

especially called to the 'Table of Syntax,' pp. 58-61. It is intended for frequent reference after the preceding sections have been studied.

The 'Rules for Cases' are added, because the author believes that the student should be required to commit to memory the main uses of the cases with examples.

The 'Rules of Accent,' it is hoped, will stimulate students to the mastery of what is often neglected as a too difficult or unnecessary task. The large print should be learned first and the foot-notes afterwards as fast as interest is excited. It can now no longer be urged by teachers that the study of accent may be neglected by the student without detriment to the quality of his work. Recent publications on the subject emphasize the organic connection of the accent with word formation and lead to the hope of still further developments in the future.

The exercises in Part I. are to be written in connection with the 'Special Vocabularies.'<sup>1</sup>

It is recommended that the student commit these to memory, one at a time, in connection with the exercises on the respective subjects. If this is done, extra oral exercises upon them may easily be made in the class-room. Nos. I. and III. (end) are in-

<sup>1</sup> The arrangement of these vocabularies according to subjects follows in part a book used in French schools ('*Les Mots Grecs, groupés d'après la forme et le sens,*' par Michel Bréal et Anatole Bailly, Paris, 1884), but poetical or rare words have been excluded *unless introduced for especial reasons.*

serted as suggestions for oral work. The necessary baldness of the matter may be overlooked if it serves to fix in the memory a nucleus of a vocabulary and to give a little freedom in expressing even simple sentences in Greek.

Part II. of the exercises is somewhat more difficult, and has copious references to the Syntax. The exercises are based on selections from Greek authors, partly with the intention of giving the young student a slight introduction to the subject matter of various writers.

Part III. is for more advanced students, and is less freely annotated. The original passages, in this part, may with advantage be indicated to the student for parallel reading to familiarize him with the style and vocabulary of the Greek authors.

The 'General Vocabulary' includes all the words used in the three parts, except expressions given in notes and those in the 'Special Vocabularies': the latter, however, are referred to in each instance. The present indicative of verbs is usually given, but the present infinitive is preferred sometimes, e.g. to distinguish between *παρεῖναι* and *παρίεναι*. The aorist tense in best use is sometimes added; and in deponent verbs the aorist in use, whether middle or passive, is usually given. (See Veitch, 'Greek Verbs Irregular and Defective.')

The author wishes to acknowledge that his use of *Sidgwick's 'Greek Prose Composition'* has suggested

the elaboration of the 'Table of Syntax' and of some other features of this book.

He takes pleasure also in acknowledging the kind assistance and suggestions of Mr. George G. Carey, of Baltimore, and of Prof. Edw. H. Spieker, of the Johns Hopkins University, in the revision of portions of the manuscript.

In connection with a subject hitherto so much neglected, it may be worth while to mention some of the works most frequently used in preparing the sections on Accent. For some of the rules the author alone is responsible.

1. A Practical Introduction to Greek Accentuation, by Henry W. Chandler, M.A. (2d ed., Oxford, 1881).
2. Allgemeine Lehre vom Accent der Griechischen Sprache, von D. Carl Götting.
3. Ausführliche Grammatik der Griechischen Sprache, von Dr. Raphael Kühner.
4. Vergleichendes Accentuationssystem des Sanskrit und Griechischen, von Franz Bopp.
5. Redetheile im Griechischen und Lateinischen, von Leopold Schröder.

To Professor Bloomfield's articles reference is made in the foot-notes.

F. G. A.

BALTIMORE, *November*, 1889.

# CONTENTS.

	PAGE
NOTES ON IDIOM AND SYNTAX . . . . .	3
§§ 1, 2. Conjunctions and Particles . . . . .	3
§§ 3-8. Use of Article . . . . .	7
§ 4. Position of Article . . . . .	8
§ 5. Article with Adjectives . . . . .	10
§ 6. Article with Participles . . . . .	11
§§ 7, 8. Article with Adverbs and Phrases . . . . .	11
§§ 9, 10. Pronouns . . . . .	13
§ 11. 'That' in English . . . . .	15
§§ 12-15. Participles . . . . .	16
§ 13. Participle with article . . . . .	17
§§ 14, 15. Participle alone . . . . .	18
§ 16. Genitive Absolute . . . . .	21
§ 17. <i>λαμβάνω</i> , etc., with Participle . . . . .	22
§ 18. Use of the Negatives . . . . .	23
§ 19. The MOODS . . . . .	24
§ 20. The Particle <i>ἄν</i> . . . . .	25
§§ 21-31. The TENSES . . . . .	26
§ 22. Tenses in the Indicative . . . . .	27
§ 23. Aorist . . . . .	27
§ 24. Ingressive Aorist . . . . .	28
§ 25. Aorist as distinguished from the Perfect . . . . .	28
§ 26. Pluperfect . . . . .	29
§ 27. Present and Imperfect of Attempted Action . . . . .	30
§ 28. Primary and Secondary Tenses . . . . .	30
§ 30. Tenses in Other Moods . . . . .	32
§ 31. Tenses of the Participle . . . . .	32

	PAGE
§§ 32-34. SYNTAX OF INDEPENDENT SENTENCES . . .	34
§ 33. Statements and Questions . . . . .	35
§ 34. Deliberative Sentences . . . . .	36
§ 35. Commands, Exhortations, Wishes . . . . .	37
§§ 36-59. SYNTAX OF DEPENDENT SENTENCES . . .	38
§§ 36-38. Final Sentences . . . . .	38
§ 39. Definite and Indefinite Sentences . . . . .	40
§§ 40-47. Conditional Sentences . . . . .	41
§ 48. Causal Sentences . . . . .	46
§ 49-50. Relative Sentences . . . . .	47
§ 51. Temporal Sentences . . . . .	48
§ 52. Consecutive or Result Clauses . . . . .	50
§§ 53-59. Oratio Obliqua . . . . .	51
§ 60. Table of Syntax — a Summary of §§ 32-59 . . .	58
§§ 61-66. RULES FOR THE CASES . . . . .	62
§§ 67-79. RULES FOR ACCENT . . . . .	77

## EXERCISES :

SPECIAL VOCABULARIES . . . . .	95
Part I. Nos. I.-XXIV. . . . .	105
Part II. Nos. XXV.-XLIV. . . . .	122
Part III. Nos. XLV.-LXX. . . . .	140

GENERAL VOCABULARY . . . . .	165
------------------------------	-----

## NOTES ON IDIOM AND SYNTAX.





# GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION.

---

## NOTES ON IDIOM AND SYNTAX.

### § 1. Conjunctions and Particles in Independent Sentences (H. §§ 1036-1051).

For temporal conjunctions, etc., used in dependent clauses, see § 51.

IN writing connected Greek prose, the first thing necessary to notice is the use of the conjunctions and connective particles. In English, sentences often follow each other abruptly without connecting particles. In Greek this is seldom the case. Thus, in beginning a story, we say: 'There was once.' The Greek says: *ἦν γὰρ ποτε*, '*for* there was once.'

It will therefore be a safe rule in writing Greek, *always to begin each clause with a conjunction or particle*. Often there will be more than one.

In the English exercises which follow, this peculiarity of the Greek will be largely taken for granted, so that the student will have to insert the proper particles and conjunctions. Some of these particles cannot stand first in a clause, but must come after *one or more words*; e. g. *Ξενοφῶν οὖν: οὗτοι δέ*. The

sign † will be prefixed to these postpositive words in the list given below.

**Caution:** The conjunction is suppressed when one of two finite verbs is translated into Greek by a participle.

'But Xenophon interrupted him in the midst (and) said as follows,' ὁ μέντοι Ξενοφῶν μεταξὺ ὑπολαβὼν ἔλεξεν ὧδε, Anab. III. i. 27. With this compare —

'Cleanor rose (and) said as follows,' Κλεάνωρ ἀνέστη καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε, Anab. III. ii. 3; this latter might have been written Κλεάνωρ ἀναστὰς ἔλεξεν ὧδε.

The most common connectives are those meaning *and, but, for*. These and a few other common words are given in § 2.

In reading Greek the student should always notice the connection of sentences. If he would make a list of conjunctions and particles in a few pages of Greek previously read, he would soon form the habit and gradually familiarize himself even with the more difficult ones.

## § 2. Particles and Conjunctions used in Independent Sentences.

*And;* καί, † δέ (less often enclitic † τε).

*But;* ἀλλά, † δέ (with or without † μὲν in a preceding clause).

*Therefore;* † οὖν, † τοίνυν, ὥστε.

*Yet; however;* † μέντοι.

*For;* † γάρ.

*Also; even;* καί.

*Not even* ; οὐδέ.

*And not* ; οὐδέ (do not say καὶ οὐ).

*Not . . . nor* ; οὐ(κ) . . . οὐδέ.

*Neither . . . nor* ; οὔτε . . . οὔτε.

When μή is the proper negative (see § 18), use μήτε, μηδέ, etc.

It will be noticed that these Greek words have more than one translation.

† μέν . . . † δέ are used to contrast words and clauses. With them the article is often equivalent to a pronoun. 'Indeed;' 'on the one hand . . . on the other,' are generally awkward, and over-translate the idea. They may often be rendered into English by emphasizing the words to which they are attached.

ὁ μὲν οὐδὲν, ὁ δὲ πολλὰ κερδαίνει, 'one man gains nothing, another (gains) much.'

τότε μὲν . . . τότε δέ, 'at one time . . . at another.'

ὁ μὲν οὕτως εἶπεν· ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ Τισσαφέρνης, 'he spoke thus, but Tissaphernes when he heard,' Anab. II. iii. 24.

It must be noticed that μέν does not connect its clause with what precedes, but *looks forward* to what follows. Therefore some other particle (like οὖν) is needed with it to connect the sentence with what goes before: e. g. οἱ μὲν οὖν πρῶτοι, Anab. II. ii. 17.

ὁ δέ is often used meaning 'and he,' 'but he,' without preceding ὁ μὲν.

ὃγ is one of the most frequent particles, and at the same time one of the most difficult to render. It may imply simply a gesture, an intonation of the voice, or the emphasis of another word. It often gives to conjunctions an ironical force. It may sometimes be rendered 'accordingly,' 'so then,' 'now,' 'you see,' 'in particular,' 'in truth.' Cf. H. § 1037.

ἀλλά means 'but,' or, in beginning a speech or sentence, 'well!' 'why!'

καί means 'and,' 'also,' 'even.'

† δέ means 'and,' 'but.'

† γάρ means 'for,' 'since.' It often implies something easily inferred from the context (yes) 'for'; (no) 'for,' etc. This is especially frequent with καὶ γάρ and ἀλλὰ γάρ, as, Soph., *O. T.*, 338, 339: —

(TEIP.) . . . ἐμὲ ψέγεις.

(ΟΙΑ.) τίς γὰρ . . . οὐκ ἂν ὀργίζοιτο;

TEIRESIAS. '. . . You blame me.'

OEDIPUS. (Yes, I do, or, I do indeed), 'for who would not grow angry?'

καὶ γὰρ καὶ καπνὸς ἐφαίνετο, 'and' (they knew the king was near,) 'for smoke also appeared,' Anab. II. ii. 15. καὶ γὰρ δὴ ἔως μὲν πόλεμος ἦν, 'and' (this is clear,) 'for while there was war,' II. vi. 2. καὶ γὰρ οὖν φιλικὰ μὲν ἐπομένους οὐδέποτε εἶχεν, 'and' (this was natural,) 'for he had none following him from friendship,' II. vi. 13.

ἀλλὰ γὰρ καὶ περαίνειν ἤδη ὥρα, 'but' (enough of talk,) 'for it is now time also to be doing,' Anab. III. ii. 32.

To introduce *dependent* clauses, use the regular temporal and causal conjunctions meaning *when, while, since, before, because*, etc. (see §§ 48 and 51), or use genitive absolute or other participial forms.

### § 3. THE ARTICLE.

There is no indefinite article in Greek. English *a* (*an*) must therefore usually be omitted in translating; e.g. ποταμός, 'a river.' The indefinite τις (*quidam*) is used when the author has in mind some particular person or thing, but does not name it; e.g. γυνή τις ὄρνιν εἶχεν, 'a (certain) woman had a hen.'

**The Definite Article, English 'the.'** (G. § 141.

H. § 656 ff.)

The student who has learned to dispense with the definite article in Latin must be cautioned to return to English usage and regularly translate 'the' by ὁ, ἡ, τό.

Some peculiarities of omission and usage may be noted.

(*a*) **Class-names** (generic) and **Abstract Nouns** often take the article; e.g. 'man,' ὁ ἄνθρωπος or οἱ ἄνθρωποι, 'virtue,' ἡ ἀρετή, 'justice,' ἡ δικαιοσύνη.

(*b*) With **Proper Names** the article may be omitted just as in English: Κύρος, 'Cyrus,' Ξενοφῶν, 'Xenophon;' but it is often used, especially to mark them as 'the well-known,' or 'the above-mentioned.' ὁ Σωκράτης, 'Socrates' (the well-known).

(c) The definite article is generally used where we employ the possessive *his, hers*, etc., provided the connection is clear; e. g. ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν πατέρα, 'she comes to her father.'

§ 4. **Position of the Article.** (G. § 142, 1 and 2.

H. §§ 666–668).

(a) **Attributive position.** When a noun has *any limiting word*, whether *an adjective or a genitive*, the definite article, if used at all, must immediately precede, not the noun, but the limiting genitive, adjective, or adverb.

Hence we can say, ὁ κακὸς ἀνὴρ, ὁ ἀνὴρ ὁ κακός, ἀνὴρ ὁ κακός, all meaning 'the bad man.'

The three positions are given above in the order of their frequency.

ἡ ἐπὶ τὴν ἀκρόπολιν φέρουσα ὁδός, or ἡ ὁδὸς ἡ ἐπὶ τὴν ἀκρόπολιν φέρουσα, 'the road leading to the Acropolis.'

αἱ μεγάλαι πόλεις, or (αἱ) πόλεις αἱ μεγάλαι, 'the large cities.'

οἱ ἔνδοθεν ὀπλῖται, 'the hoplites within.'

Often the second position is more natural with an explanatory word or phrase.

οἱ ὀπλῖται οἱ ἔνδοθεν, i. e. 'the ones who are within.'

So above, ἡ ὁδὸς ἡ, etc., 'the one which leads.'

• (b) **Predicate position.** G. § 142, 3. H. § 670.

If the article is placed *directly before the noun*, and

there only, the meaning is changed, and the adjective is predicated of the noun. Thus:

κακὸς ὁ ἀνὴρ, or ὁ ἀνὴρ κακός, means ‘*the man* is bad.’

The position is the same whether a copula is used or not.

ἦσαν αἱ Ἴωνικαὶ πόλεις Τισσαφέρνους, ‘the Ionian cities were Tissaphernes’s.’

But ἦσαν αἱ Τισσαφέρνους πόλεις Ἴωνικαί, ‘Tissaphernes’s cities were Ionian.’

*Attributive position.*

ὁ σοφὸς ἀνὴρ  
ὁ ἀνὴρ ὁ σοφός  
ἀνὴρ ὁ σοφός

} ‘the wise  
man.’

*Predicate position.*

ἀνὴρ ὁ σοφός  
σοφὸς ὁ ἀνὴρ

} ‘the man  
is wise.’

All dependent genitives (*except the personal pronouns and partitives*) may be put in the attributive position. G. § 142, I, note. H. § 666, a, b, c.

ὁ ἐμὸς πατήρ or ὁ πατήρ ὁ ἐμός, ‘my father.’

ὁ ἐμαντοῦ πατήρ or ὁ πατήρ ὁ ἐμαντοῦ, ‘my own father.’

οἱ τῶν Θεβαίων στρατηγοί or οἱ στρατηγοὶ οἱ τῶν Θεβαίων (also the predicate position, οἱ στρατηγοὶ τῶν Θεβαίων), ‘the Theban generals.’

The personal pronouns, however, must have the predicate position, e. g. ὁ πατήρ ἐμοῦ, or ἐμοῦ ὁ πατήρ, ‘my father.’

αὐτοῦ ἡ οἰκία, ‘his (ejus) house’ (but ἡ ἐαυτοῦ οἰκία, ‘his own (sua) house’).



So also with partitives the predicate position is used, e. g. *ὁ ἥμισυς τοῦ ἀριθμοῦ*, 'the half of the number.'

(c) With **Demonstrative Pronouns**. Nouns usually require the article with *οὗτος*, *ἐκεῖνος*, and *ὁδε*. The pronoun then has the predicate position, e. g. *οὗτος ὁ ἀνὴρ*, 'this man.' G. § 142, 4. H. § 673.

(d) The adjectives *μέσος*, 'middle of;' *ἄκρος*, 'top of;' *ἔσχατος*, 'last of;' take the predicate position.

*μέση ἡ πόλις*, 'the middle of the city.' G. § 142, 4, Note 4. H. § 671.

(e) *αὐτός* in the attributive position means 'same;' in the predicate position it means 'self.'

*ὁ αὐτὸς ἀνὴρ* or *ὁ ἀνὴρ ὁ αὐτός*, 'the same man;' *τὰ αὐτά* (= *ταῦτά*), 'the same things.'

*αὐτὸς ὁ ἀνὴρ*, 'the man himself.'

#### § 5. **Article with Adjectives.** (G. § 139.

H. §§ 621, 622.)

In English we often use with the definite article an adjective alone, leaving the noun understood, e. g. *the gay, the young, the good*. In Greek also this is very frequent with all genders.

*οἱ πολλοί*, 'the many;' *τὰ ἐπιτήδεια*, 'necessaries;' *οἱ σοφοί*, 'the wise.'

*The neuter adjective and article often form an ab-*

stract noun: τὸ πονηρόν, 'evil' (cf. ὁ πονηρός, 'the evil one').

So τὸ ἀληθές, 'the true,' 'truth' (= ἀλήθεια).

Sometimes the article is omitted, τὸ μέσον or μέσον, 'the middle;' (τὰ ἀγαθὰ, *bona*).

§ 6. **Article with Participles.** (G. § 270, 2. H. § 966.)

In like manner the participle with the article is used as a noun. The beginner should learn to use this freely. It is especially convenient in translating relative clauses.

ὁ λύσας, 'he who loosed.'

ὁ λυσάμενος, 'he who ransomed.'

ὁ λυθείς, 'he who was released.'

ὁ λελυμένος, 'he who has been set at liberty.'

ὁ λύσων, 'he who is to release.'

ἐπὶ τούτων τῶν ἐλεφάντων τῶν μάλιστα χειροσθῶν, '(they mount) upon those elephants which are especially well broken.'

τὰ γιγνόμενα, 'those things which are going on;' τὰ γεγενημένα, 'the things which have happened.'

§ 7. **Article with Adverbs and Phrases.** (G. § 141, 3. H. § 600.)

Adverbs and limiting phrases, such as prepositions and their cases, may be used with the article and noun. The noun may be, and frequently is, omitted,

just as in the case of the article with adjectives or participles.

Χειρίσσοφος καὶ οἱ σὺν ἐκείνῳ (στρατιῶται), 'Chirisophus and those with him.'

οἱ ἄνω πολέμιοι, 'the enemy who are above.'

οἱ ἔμπροσθεν, 'those in front.'

ὑπὸ τῶν ὀπισθεν, 'by those in the rear.'

τοῖς δὲ παρ' ἑαυτῷ παρήγγειλεν, 'he gave orders to those with him,' Anab. IV. iii. 29 (here some word like *στρατιώταις* is easily supplied).

οἱ δὲ ἄνω . . . ἐκλείπουσι τὰ ὑπὲρ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἄκρα, 'the (enemy) above abandon the heights above the river,' Anab. IV. iii. 23.

Here *πολέμιοι* is easily supplied from *ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνω πολεμίους* in the preceding sentence, while *ἄκρα* might have been omitted, leaving *τὰ ὑπὲρ τοῦ ποταμοῦ*, 'the (parts) above the river.' So in the next section *τὰ πέραν*, 'matters on the other side of the river.'

§ 8. The **neuter article** may be put before any part of speech or combination of words, and thus make a *temporary* neuter noun.

τὸ Ξέρξης, 'the word *Xerxes*.'

τὸ εἰ βούλει, 'the expression *if you will*.'

τὸ πόλεως προπαροξύνεται, 'the word *πόλεως* is proparoxytone.' G. § 141, Note 7. H. § 600 (a).

**Caution.** Never use the article alone to express *he, him, she, her*, etc. This is a mistake often made because the beginner has seen *οἱ μὲν*, 'these;' *οἱ δέ*, 'those.' *With these particles* the article may be so

used, and *ὁ δέ*, 'and he,' may be used without a preceding *ὁ μὲν*. So also *ὁ μὲν* may be followed by something else than *ὁ δέ* as a contrast.

§ 9. (a) **PRONOUNS.** Demonstrative; Personal;  
Reflexive.

The **personal endings of the verb** serve for the unemphatic English pronouns in the nominative case; the **oblique cases of αὐτός** (or of *ὁ μὲν*, *ὁ δέ*) translate the pronouns not in the nominative. G. §§ 79 ff., 144 ff. H. § 261 ff., 677 ff.

When greater emphasis is required, the appropriate pronouns of the first and second persons and *ὁ μὲν*, *ἡ μὲν*, *οἱ δέ*, etc., are employed.

To give demonstrative meaning we use *οὗτος*, *ὅδε*, or *ἐκεῖνος*. Of these, *οὗτος* and *ὅδε*, 'this,' generally refer to what is near; *ἐκεῖνος*, 'that,' refers to what is more remote.

Notice that *οὗτος* is the regular antecedent of the relative pronoun.

**Difference between *οὗτος* and *ὅδε*.** *οὗτος* (*τοιούτος*, *οὕτως*, etc.) often refers to something just said, while *ὅδε* (*τοιόσδε*, *ὥδε*, etc.) refers to what follows, e. g. *ταὐτ' εἶπεν*, 'thus he spoke;' but *τάδε εἶπεν*, 'he spoke as follows.'

*οὗτος* was often used colloquially in direct address.

*οὗτος, τί ποιεῖς*; 'you there! what are you doing?'

*οὗτος, οὐπὶ τοῦ τέγους, κατὰβαινε*, 'you there on the roof! come down!' cf. Ar. *Nubes*, 1502.

## (δ) Tables of Personal and Reflexive Pronouns.

	Nom. Case regularly.	Nominative if emphatic.	Gen., Dative, and Accus.
I, we, of me, etc.,	Pers. ending of verb,	ἐγώ, ἡμεῖς.	ἐμοῦ, ἐμοί, ἐμέ, ἡμῶν, etc.
Thou, you, of you, etc.,	Pers. ending of verb,	σύ, ὑμεῖς.	σοῦ, σοί, σέ, ὑμῶν, etc.
he, she, it,	Pers. ending of verb,	ὁ μέν, ἡ μέν, τὸ μέν, ὁ δέ, etc., or demons. pron.	αὐτοῦ, αὐτῇ, αὐτόν, αὐτῆς, αὐτῇ, etc.
they,	Pers. ending of verb.	οἱ μέν, αἱ μέν, οἱ δέ, etc.	αὐτῶν, αὐτοῖς, αὐτούς, αὐτάς, etc.

Self = αὐτός.	Nominative. Reg. Intens.	Nominative (with pronoun added).	
I myself, we ourselves,	αὐτός, αὐτή,	ἐγὼ αὐτός, (αὐτή), ἡμεῖς αὐτοί.	ἐμαντοῦ, etc., ἡμῶν αὐτῶν, etc.
Thou thyself, you yourselves,	αὐτός, αὐτή,	σὺ αὐτός, ὑμεῖς αὐτοί, etc.	σεαυτοῦ, etc., ὑμῶν αὐτῶν, etc.
he himself, etc.,	αὐτός, αὐτή, αὐτό,	αὐτός + demons. pronoun.	ἐαυτοῦ or αὐτοῦ, etc., ἐαυτῶν, etc.

## Examples: —

‘I saw her,’ εἶδον αὐτήν. ‘I saw her myself,’ αὐτὸς εἶδον αὐτήν.

‘He struck him,’ αὐτὸν ἐπάταξε. ‘She struck herself,’ αὐτὴν ἐπάταξε.

‘His head,’ ἡ κεφαλὴ αὐτοῦ. ‘His own head,’ ἡ ἐαυτοῦ κεφαλὴ.

‘ Their house,’ αὐτῶν οἰκία. ‘ These ran, those fought it out,’ οἱ μὲν ἀπέδραμον, οἱ δὲ ἀπεμάχοντο.

‘ He smiled and said,’ ὁ δὲ γελάσας εἶπε.

§ 10. **Relative Pronouns.** A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number. Its case depends on the construction of its own clause. If the relative is the subject, the verb takes the *person* of the antecedent.

**Assimilation or Attraction.** A very common Greek idiom is the changing of the relative from the accusative case to the case of the antecedent, if the latter happens to be in the genitive or dative.

τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὧν ἔχει (for οὓς ἔχει), ‘ some of the soldiers whom he has.’

τοῖς ἀγαθοῖς οἷς ἔχομεν (for ἃ ἔχομεν), ‘ with the good things which we have.’

This is called assimilation or attraction of case. The antecedent, when easily supplied, may be omitted; it is then represented by its case only.

ἦσθη οἷς εἶδε (as if τούτοις ἃ εἶδε), ‘ he was pleased with what he saw.’ G. §§ 151–154. H. §§ 993 ff.

### § 11. ‘ That ’ in English.

The beginner must be on his guard in translating the various uses of the word ‘ that.’

1. ‘ *That* man;’ a demonstrative pronoun, ἐκεῖνος.

2. ‘ The book *that* I read;’ a relative pronoun, ὅς, ἥ, ὅ.

3. 'He said *that* Cyrus was slain;' either *ὅτι* (ὥς) + finite verb, or omit and use infinitive.

4. 'I know *that* I am blind;' *ὅτι* (ὥς) + finite verb, or omit and use nominative of participle.

5. 'He gave orders *that* Orontes should be killed;' omit and use infinitive.

6. 'He runs up *that* he may see;' *ἵνα*, ὥς, ὅπως + subjunctive or optative.

7. 'He runs *so* fast *that* he escapes;' (οὕτως) . . . ὥστε.

Examples: —

1. ἐκείνης τῆς γυναικός, 'of that woman.'

2. τὴν βίβλον ἣν ἀνέγνω, 'the book that I read.'

3. ἔλεγε ὅτι (ὥς = 'how that') Κῦρος ἀπέθανε (H.\* ἀποθάνοι), or ἔλεγε Κῦρον ἀποθανεῖν, 'he said that Cyrus was killed.'

4. οἶδα ὅτι τυφλός εἰμι ὅτι οἶδα τυφλὸς ὢν, 'I know that I am blind.'

5. τοῦτον ἐκέλευσα πάντα σημαίνειν ἐμοί, 'I gave orders that this one should tell me all,' or 'I ordered him to tell.'

6. ἀποκτείνει με . . . ἵνα αὐτὸς τὸν χρυσὸν ἔχῃ (cf. Eur. *Hec.* 27), 'he slays me that he may himself have the gold.'

7. οὕτως ταχέως ἔτρεχεν ὥστε ἀπέφυγε, 'he ran so fast that he escaped.'

§ 12. **Participles.** (G. §§ 275-280. H. §§ 965-987.)

The student must learn to use the participle freely. *While in Latin* there are only two active and two

passive participles, in Greek there is a full set (theoretically at least) in the active, middle, and passive. In Latin, e. g., *victus* means 'having been conquered,' and when it is necessary to say 'having conquered,' we must use some phrase like 'cum vicisset.' In Greek we can pass from tense to tense and voice to voice without changing from the participle to the finite verb; e. g. —

νικῶν, 'conquering;' νικώμενος, '(being) conquered.'

νικήσας, 'having conquered;' νικηθείς, 'having been conquered;' and so on.

It is worth while to remind the beginner here, as in the indicative mood, that the aorist will usually be the tense to employ for the English perfect unless *completion* is insisted upon; e. g. γενικημένος 'having been reduced to a state of subjection.'

§ 13. **Participle with Article.** (G. §§ 258, 276, 2.

H. § 938.)

Just as the infinitive is a *verbal noun*, so the participle is a *verbal adjective*. It may be used, therefore, like any other adjective to qualify a noun.

This is natural and easily understood. But the next step needs much more emphasis. As the article and adjective stand for a noun, so may the article with the participle, the noun being omitted in both instances. The combination is equivalent to 'he who' and a finite verb. Examples of this have already been given in § 6.



## § 14. Participle alone.

We come now to the participle without noun or article.

(a) Let the beginner clearly understand that the participle will usually require, or at least admit of, something more than mere tense translations like 'being,' 'having.' He will often have to add to his translation some word like 'when,' 'because,' 'since,' 'although,' 'if,' 'in order that.' The same thought may also be expressed by various conjunctions with the appropriate finite verb, but the participle is often much more convenient, whether under the form of the *genitive absolute* or *any other case* to which the participle is attached. E. g. (accusative case): —

'He impaled him (when) dead,' αὐτὸν τεθνηκότα ἀνεσταύρωσεν.

So in dative case, 'they get upon the elephants as they lie there,' ἐπιβαίνουνσι τοῖς ἐλέφασιν κειμένοις.

(b) In English phrases like 'by doing this he saved her' (τοῦτο ποιῶν αὐτὴν ἔσωσεν), it is natural to think of a preposition, or at least some case other than the nominative, as a translation for 'by,' 'with,' 'in,' etc. But if the habit is formed of examining the real connection, the construction will be clear at a glance.

CAUTION. On the other hand, some phrases containing 'from . . . -ing,' or 'of . . . -ing,' must not be translated by the *participle*, but by the infinitive or some other construction.

'Nothing will prevent you *from* flinging yourself into the Barathrum,' οὐδέν σε κωλύσει σεαυτὸν ἐμβαλεῖν ἐς τὸ βάραθρον, Ar. *Nub.* 1449. 'They are also afraid *of* falling off,' φοβοῦνται καὶ τὸ καταπεσεῖν, Anab. III. ii. 19. 'He was afraid *of* being arrested,' ἐδεδοίκει ὅπως μὴ συλληφθήσοιτο, Isoc. 17, 22. See also § 52 (end).

§ 15. Below are given examples of some of the most common attendant circumstances and relations defined by the participle, such as **Time**, **Cause**, **Condition**, **Limitation**, and (in future) **Purpose**. G. §§ 275–280. H. §§ 965–987.

1. **Time.** English 'when,' 'as,' 'while,' 'after (that).'

(Nom.) After they had selected men they send them,' καὶ ἄνδρας ἐλόμενοι πέμπουσι, Anab. I. iii. 20. Usually rendered by present participle.

'When he had done this he crossed over,' ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσας διέβαινε, I. iv. 17.

(Acc.) 'He saw me as I was passing by,' εἶδέν με παριόντα.

(Gen. and Dat.) 'He despised him while he was absent and reviled him when he was present,' τούτου μὲν κατεφρόνει ἀπόντος, παρόντι δὲ ἐλοιδορεῖτο.

(Dat.) 'And there ran up to Xenophon while he was breakfasting a couple of young men,' καὶ ἀριστῶντι τῷ Ξενοφῶντι προσέτρεχον δύο νεανίσκω, Anab. IV. iii. 10; cf. ff.

2. **Cause, manner, means.** English, 'because,' 'by,' etc.

'I weep for them because they are involved in misfortune,' κείνους δὲ κλαίω συμφορᾷ κεχρημένους.

### 3. **Accompaniment.** English, 'with.'

This is often translated by using the participles *ἔχων, λαβών, ἄγων, φέρων, χρώμενος*.

'He came with (i. e. bringing) the money,' *ἦλθε φέρων τὸ ἀργύριον*.

### 4. **Condition.** (Negative *μή*.) Translated 'if.'

The protasis of a conditional sentence is often represented by a participle.

'But you will soon know, if you listen,' *σὺ δὲ κλύων (= ἐὰν κλύης) εἴσει τάχα* (G. § 226).

So too the genitive absolute.

'If they should conquer they would kill nobody, but if they should be defeated not one of them would survive,' *νικῶντες μὲν οὐδένα ἂν κατακάνοιεν, ἡττηθέντων δὲ αὐτῶν οὐδεὶς ἂν λειφθείη*, Anab. III. i. 2.

In the following example there are two 'if' clauses expressed by participles, one by the genitive absolute (because the subject changes from 'I' to 'Cyrus') and the other by the nominative.

'I should wish, in case I went away against the will of Cyrus (if Cyrus were unwilling), to escape his notice in departing (or when I went off),' *βουλοίμην δ' ἂν ἄκοντος ἀπιὼν Κύρου λαθεῖν αὐτὸν ἀπελθών*, Anab. I. iii. 17.

### 5. **Concession or Limitation.** English, 'although.'

*Participle* with or without *καίπερ*.

‘Although they fared ill they did not retreat, *κακῶς πράττοντες, οὐκ ἀπεχώρησαν*.

‘And they were not repulsed, although they suffered severely,’ *καὶ οὐκ ἀπελαύνοντο καίπερ μεγάλως προσπταίοντες*, Hdt. VII. 210.

6. **Purpose.** English, ‘to,’ ‘in order to.’

Purpose is expressed by the future participle and *ὥς*. With verbs of motion *ὥς* may be omitted.<sup>1</sup>

‘He came to ransom his daughter,’ *ἦλθε λυσόμενος θυγάτρα*, Il. I. 13.

‘And Æneas, when he saw a man with (or ‘wearing,’ *ἔχων*) a handsome robe running to throw himself over, took hold of him with the intention of stopping him,’ *καὶ Αἰνέας . . . ἰδὼν τινα θέοντα ὥς ῥίψοντα ἑαυτόν, στολὴν ἔχοντα καλήν, ἐπιλαμβάνεται ὥς κωλύσων*, Anab. IV. vii. 13.

*ὥς* with future participle often means ‘with apparent or avowed intention of,’ etc.

#### § 16. **Genitive Absolute.**

It must be noticed that the use of the genitive absolute is not confined to any one of the meanings in § 15. It may denote any attendant circumstance; the advantage of using it is that it *changes the subject* without introducing a finite verb and conjunction.

*ταῦτ’ ἐπράχθη Κόνωνος στρατηγούντος*, ‘this was done when Konon was general;’ instead of *ταῦτ’ ἐπράχθη ὅτε Κόνων στρατήγει*.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Gildersleeve, Just. Mart. A. 2, 11.

§ 17. (a) *λανθάνω*, *τυγχάνω*, and *φθάνω* with participle.

The translation of these verbs requires care.

A participle used with *λανθάνω* usually contains the leading idea of the sentence. This *may* also be the case with *τυγχάνω* and *φθάνω*.

The translation will vary; sometimes an adverb or phrase will best render the meaning; e. g.

*λανθάνω*, 'escape notice;' 'unobserved.'

*τυγχάνω*, 'happen;' 'as it chanced.'

*φθάνω*, 'anticipate;' 'first;' 'beforehand.'

Examples: —

'As it *happened* they were gathering fagots,' *ἐτύγχανον φρύγανα συλλέγοντες*, Anab. IV. iii. 11.

'As *luck would have it*, he was present,' *παρὼν ἐτύγχανε*.

'They came *first*,' *ἔφθασαν ἀφικόμενοι*.

In Thuc. III. 112 all three verbs occur: 'Demosthenes's men captured *beforehand* and *unobserved* the larger hill, but the Ambraciots, *as it happened*, ascended first the smaller hill,' . . . τὸν μὲν μείζω [λόφον] . . . οἱ [τοῦ Δημοσθένους] . . . ἔλαθόν τε καὶ ἔφθασαν προκαταλαβόντες, τὸν δὲ ἐλάσσω ἔτυχον οἱ Ἀμπρακῖται προαναβάντες.

*οὔχομαι*, 'am gone,' and *διατελέω*, 'continue,' are often used with a participle in a similar way.

'You have constantly been trying,' *διετέλεσας πειρώμενος*, Plato, Theaet. 206 A.

Notice also the use of the participle with *παύομαι*, *ἤδομαι*, *χαίρω*.

§ 18. **Negatives οὐ and μή.** (G. § 283. H. § 1018 ff.)

(What is here said of οὐ and μή applies also to their compounds οὐδεῖς, οὐδέ, οὔτε, μηδεῖς, etc.)

οὐ is the negative of simple assertion or question. Therefore it is found all through Group I., § 33, and also with the infinitive, optative, or participle representing the indicative.

It is always the negative in the **apodosis** of any conditional sentence, as the apodosis contains the assertion.

μή is the negative of *prohibition, wish, condition, conception*.

It is therefore found in Groups II. and III. (see §§ 34 and 35), and always in the **protasis** of negative conditions and in indefinite sentences.

It is regularly used with the infinitive (except after words of saying and thinking; see § 53 ff.).

Participles expressing a *condition*, or when equivalent to an *indefinite relative* clause, take μή; otherwise the participle has οὐ.

Examples: —

οὐκ εἰδώς, 'since (etc.) he does not know.'

μή εἰδώς, 'if he does not know.'

With the article: —

οἱ οὐ δυνάμενοι, 'those who are unable.'

οἱ μή δυνάμενοι, 'any who are unable,' or 'whoever are unable.'

Cf. τὰ ὄντα τε ὡς ὄντα καὶ τὰ μὴ ὄντα ὡς οὐκ ὄντα, (he reported) 'facts as facts and whatever were not facts as not being facts ;' Anab. IV. iv. 15.

§ 19. **The Moods.** (G. § 213. H. §§ 865 ff.)

The uses of the moods are more fully treated, page 34 ff.

**Indicative.** The indicative mood is used for simple statements, assertions, and questions (see Group I., § 33). Its tenses are explained, §§ 22 ff.

**Subjunctive.** The subjunctive *in all tenses* usually refers to the *future*.

**Optative.** In the optative the tenses do not express time : this depends on the connection.

In *independent* sentences the optative has two uses :

1. (Without ἄν). Future wishes (any tense).
2. (With ἄν). The potential optative ; or the apodosis of an ideal ('should') condition. (Future in any tense).

In *dependent* sentences : —

3. The optative may represent the subjunctive or indicative.

**Infinitive.** The infinitive is a verbal noun. It is not limited by person, number, etc. (√ finis, *limit*).

1. It may be used with the definite article declined in the neuter singular. This secures at the same time the privileges of a noun and the distinctions of tense, voice, etc., e. g. τὸ λυθῆναι, etc.

N. A. τὸ λύειν, 'loosing.'

G. τοῦ λύειν, 'of loosing.'

D. τῷ λύειν, 'to, for, by, loosing.'

Cf. Lat. infinitive declined by aid of gerund, — amare, amandi, amando, etc. G. § 141, Note 6. H. § 959.

2. The infinitive may be used with or without the article as the subject or object of another verb.

3. It is used in Oratio Obliqua to represent the corresponding tense of some finite mood.

For other uses see Grammar.

**Imperative.** The imperative mood expresses commands.

§ 20. **The Particle ἄν.** (G. §§ 207 ff. H. §§ 857 ff.)

The particle ἄν has two uses.

1. *In independent sentences.*

(a) **With indicative** (secondary tenses) in apodosis of unreal conditions.<sup>1</sup> ἄν is the only thing which distinguishes between the unreal and the simple past conditions.

εἶδεν αὐτὸν εἰ παρεγένετο, 'he saw him if he was there ;'  
but εἶδεν ἄν αὐτὸν εἰ παρεγένετο, 'he would have seen him if he had been there.'

<sup>1</sup> For the use of ἄν with imperfect or aorist indicative to denote customary action, see G. § 206 ; H. § 835.



(b) **With optative** in apodosis of 'Should' conditions.

ἴδους ἄν εἰ παρὰγένοιτο, 'you would see if you should be present.'

Or in potential optative with the protasis merely implied; see § 33 b.

(c) In indirect discourse; see § 55.

2. *In dependent sentences.* Here ἄν belongs with the particle, conjunction, or relative, and is always followed by the subjunctive. E. g. εἰ + ἄν = εἰάν (ἤν or ἄν), ἐπειδή + ἄν = ἐπειδάν, ὅτε + ἄν = ὅταν, ὅς + ἄν.

In indefinite relative and temporal sentences and general suppositions ἄν may be rendered by 'ever,' e. g. ἐπειδάν, 'whenever.'

## § 21. Tenses.

Tenses in Greek do not always distinguish the *time* of an action; frequently they distinguish merely its *kind*, i. e. as *continued*, *completed*, or as a simple *occurrence*.

The student must distinguish the use of the tenses in the indicative (and its representatives in Oratio Obliqua, i. e. infinitive, optative, and participle) from *their use in the other moods*.

## § 22. Tenses in the Indicative.

The tenses in the indicative express the *time* as well as the *kind* of action. The following table will show this: —

	Action brought to pass.	Continued Action.	Completed Action.
Present time,		Pres. λύω, am loosing, or loose.	Perf. λέλυκα, have loosed.
Past time,	Aor. ἔλυσα, loosed.	Impf. ἔλυον, was loosing.	Plupf. ἐλέλυκειν, had loosed.
Future time,	Fut. λύσω, shall loose.	[Fut. λύσω, shall be loosing.]	Fut. Perf. λελύσμαι, shall have been loosed.

Cf. G. § 200. H. § 823.

## § 23. Aorist Tense.

While the above table will serve to define the tenses, it must be impressed upon the student that this tense is of very frequent occurrence.

It both corresponds to the so-called English imperfect, e. g. 'I did,' and also is more often used for the English perfect than the perfect itself, and lastly often takes the place of the pluperfect.

As distinguished from the imperfect it means *simple past occurrence*, ἐποίησα, 'I did,' while the

imperfect means *continued* or *repeated* past action, *ἐποίουν*, 'I was doing,' or 'I used to do.'

The aorist has been described as *momentary*, and represented by a dot (.), while the Imperfect is represented by a line (—). This is often but not always true. Thus, *ἐβασίλευε*, 'he was king;' *ἐβασίλευσε*, 'he became king' (ingressive aorist); but *ἐβασίλευσε* may also refer to the whole reign looked upon as a past event, and may be translated 'he reigned.' H. § 841 ff.

The distinction, however, between the two tenses is one easily made, and only needs observation on the part of the student.

§ 24. **Ingressive Aorist.** (G. § 200, Note 5 (*b*).

H. § 842.)

The aorist often means *entering upon* a certain state. It will naturally be found in verbs denoting a state or condition; it is frequent in the contract verbs and in those in *-ευω*.

*ἐπλούτουν*, 'I was rich;' *ἐπλούτησα*, 'I became rich.'

*ἐνόσουν*, 'I was ill;' *ἐνόσησα*, 'I fell ill.'

*ἤρχον*, 'I was in office;' *ἤρξα*, 'I obtained office.'

§ 25. **The Aorist as distinguished from the Perfect.**

Not only is the aorist used with great frequency for the English imperfect, but the Greeks often preferred to express the aorist idea where we have the

perfect. So much is this the case that it will be safe for the student to *make a practice of using the aorist for the perfect* unless it is clear that emphasis is laid upon the *state or condition in the present*.

It must also be noticed that the aorist will often be required because the perfect in some verbs has a present meaning, e. g. πολλάκις ἐθαύμασα, 'I have frequently wondered.'

With this compare also § 26, *Caution*.

#### § 26. The Pluperfect.

Where we are careful to state the event as occurring previous to some other event, the Greeks were generally satisfied with the simple statement of past occurrence.

'He sends for Cyrus from the province of which he *had* made him satrap,' Κύρον μεταπέμπεται ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἧς αὐτὸν σατράπην ἐποίησε (aorist) ; Anab. I. i. 2.

'They went to rest, for night *had* come on,' ἀνεπαύοντο δέ, νύξ γὰρ ἐπεγένετο.

Often, of course, either the aorist indicative or aorist participle may be used to represent the English pluperfect.

ἐπεὶ ταῦτ' ἔλεξεν, ἀνέστη, or λέξας ταῦτα, ἀνέστη, for, 'when he *had* said this, he arose.'

*Let the beginner, therefore, avoid the pluperfect altogether. In the first part of the following exercises a*

note will tell the student when the pluperfect is required, otherwise the aorist is to be used. Of course the pluperfect in English is often due to indirect discourse. In Greek, unless the verb is changed to the optative, the original tense and mood are both retained.

‘He said that he approved of what he *had* seen and (*had*) heard,’ ἔφη ἐπαινεῖν ὅσα καὶ εἶδε (or ἶδοι) καὶ ἤκουσε (or ἀκούσειε. See § 53 and § 54, 2.

*Caution.* Some verbs are used in the perfect with a present meaning or have no present tense at all. In such verbs the pluperfect has the force of an imperfect, e. g. οἶδα (Lat. novi), ‘I know;’ μέμνημαι (Lat. memini), ‘I remember;’ ἔστηκα, ‘I stand.’ G. § 200, Note 6. H. § 849 (*a, b, c*).

#### § 27. **Present and Imperfect of Attempted Action.**

The present or imperfect often denotes that an action was begun or attempted but not accomplished, e. g. δίδωμι, ‘I offer;’ ἐδίδουν, ‘I offered;’ but ἔδωκα (aor.), ‘I gave.’ πείθω, ‘I try to persuade;’ ἔπειθον, ‘I tried to persuade;’ ἔπεισα, ‘I prevailed.’ G. § 200, Note 2. H. §§ 825, 832.

#### § 28. **Primary and Secondary Tenses.** (G. § 90, 2. H. § 301.)

In the **Indicative**, the present, perfect, future, and *future perfect* are called Primary (or Principal) tenses,

and the imperfect, aorists (first and second), and pluperfect are called Secondary (or Historical) tenses.

PRIMARY (P.).	SECONDARY (H.).
Present,	Imperfect,
Future,	Aorists,
Perfect,	Pluperfect.
Future Perfect.	

On this difference of *tense* in the leading verb depends the choice of *mood* in the dependent sentences, i. e. Final sentences (see § 36), Indefinites (see § 39), and all finite dependent clauses in Oratio Obliqua (see § 53 ff.).

While in Latin there is also a sequence of *tense*, in Greek there is a sequence of *mood* only. *Whenever any change is made* by reason of dependence upon a secondary tense, use the optative mood.

But the Greeks often preferred to retain the original thought or expression, and in all these cases it was open to them to retain the original mood. This was sometimes done throughout a whole passage. Frequently there is a mixture of the two; cf. Anab. II. ii. 15.

In the table of Syntax (p. 58) an asterisk (\*) is added to H., the sign of the Historical or Secondary sequence, to indicate that the primary sequence may be retained; thus H\*.

§ 29. When the optative and infinitive or participle (see § 56) are used by reason of indirect discourse,

the tense corresponding to that of the original verb is used. As these moods have no imperfect nor pluperfect, the present and perfect respectively take their places. G. §§ 243, 246. H. §§ 852, 853.

### § 30. Tenses in the Other Moods.

In the infinitive, subjunctive, optative, and imperative the tenses have no necessary connection with *time*, it is the *kind of action* that we must think of. E. g. as the whole of the imperative mood refers to the future, it is obvious that the aorist must refer to the future.

In such final clauses as *ἵνα ἴδῃ* and *ἵνα ἴδῃς*, 'to see,' 'in order to see,' the aorists both refer to the future. The distinctions, therefore, which the beginner must fix in his mind are those of *continued* action, *simple occurrence*, and *completed* action.

*The tenses chiefly employed in these moods are the present and aorist.* Here a difference obtains similar to the difference between the indicative imperfect and aorist. The present denotes *continued* or *repeated* action, while the aorist denotes a *simple occurrence* of the action, the *time* of both being precisely the same. (G. § 202, 1. H. § 851.)

### § 31. Tenses of the Participle. (G. § 204. H. § 856.)

The tenses of the participle denote present, past, or future time *relatively* to the time of the verb with

which they are connected. While the usage is generally the same as the indicative, one or two cautions are necessary.

As elsewhere, so in the participle, the aorist is frequently used where other tenses are employed in English.

(a) The **English present participle** is constantly but inexactly used in expressions like *rising he said; laughing he ran away; choosing their generals they came.*

In such expressions it is generally obvious that the action *precedes* the time of the leading verb. But the first two might mean 'he said it *while rising*,' and 'he *went on laughing while* he was running away.' The Greek removes this ambiguity by means of the tense; in English we must add 'while' to give the force of the present.

ἀναστὰς ἔλεξε, 'rising (i. e. having arisen) he said.'

γελάσας ἀπέδραμε, 'he ran away with a laugh' (i. e. having laughed).

ἐλόμενοι δὲ στρατηγοὺς ἦλθον, 'choosing (having chosen) generals they came.'

(b) The **English participle 'having —'** may be either the Greek aorist or perfect.

The aorist expresses the *act* or *fact*; the perfect denotes the *state*. E. g. —



AORIST.	PERFECT.
ἐκπλαγείς, 'having been frightened.'	ἐκπεπληγμένος, 'in a state of terror.'
τρωθείς, 'having received a wound.'	τετρωμένος, 'in a wounded condition.'
πεσών, 'having fallen.'	πεπτωκώς, 'having fallen and lying on the ground.'

Generally speaking the aorist will be the most frequent translation for the English perfect participle.

Notice, however, the usage of the Greek perfect in the following sentences: —

ὑποδεδεμένοι ἐκοιμῶντο, 'they went to sleep with their shoes on,' Anab. IV. v. 14. With which compare the present participle of customary action in Plato, *Theaet.* 193. C.

οἱ ἔμπαλιν ὑποδύμενοι, 'those who wear their shoes first on one foot, then on the other (i. e. reverse them).'

καταλαμβάνει . . . τὴν θυγατέρα τοῦ κωμάρχου ἐνάτην ἡμέραν γεγαμημένην, 'he finds the village-chief's daughter married these eight days' (or, 'now the ninth day'); Anab. IV. v. 24.

### § 32. Independent and Dependent Moods and Tenses.

In the following sections an attempt is made to give the student a concise view of the more important groups of syntax. The first acquaintance with the subjunctive and optative is apt to be perplexing. *Since the same translation will not always suit these*

moods, the average student not unnaturally concludes either that *any* translation will do, or that *no* translation is exact enough. The result of this is indifference or discouragement. But when he sees that the main uses may be brought into reasonable limits, each with its own clear meaning, he takes hold of the subject with more energy.

To make these uses plain to the eye, a *Table of Syntax* is given at the end of these groups (pp. 58-61). After the student has once clearly understood the following explanations, he may turn directly to the table whenever it is necessary to refresh his memory.

The first and most obvious distinction in connected discourse is that between *dependent* and *independent* sentences. The teacher must make this very clear by examples, and require the student to point out the conjunction or relative pronoun in each finite dependent sentence.

#### (A.) INDEPENDENT SENTENCES.

§ 33. **GROUP I.** (*a*) **Indicative.** Negative οὐ. Statements and Direct Questions, past, present, or future. (G. § 213. H. § 865.)

*That is not true. Will he be there? He was there yesterday.* All such sentences are put in the indicative. If the sentence is negative, use οὐ.

E. g. [εἰ τοῦτο ἀληθές ἐστι] (οὐ) χαίρω, '[if that is true] I do (not) rejoice.' The part in brackets is of course *dependent*, and has nothing to do with the present point.

(b.) **Potential Optative.** (G. § 226, Note 1.  
H. § 872.)

Less positive assertions and questions are expressed by the optative with *ἄν*. Its translation here is *may, can, might, would*, etc.

‘I should like to ask,’ *ἡδέως ἄν ἐποίμην*, Dem. XVIII. § 64.

‘Whither can one turn?’ *ποῖ τις ἄν τράποιτο*; Ar. *Plut.*

375.

N. B. Do not use the future optative in this construction or elsewhere except in Oratio Obliqua. Present and aorist are the tenses most frequent.

This use of the optative may become the apodosis of an (ideal or) “should” condition; see § 44 (b).

§ 34. **GROUP II. Deliberative Questions.** (G. § 256. H. § 866 (3).) Negative *μή*.

Questions not asked directly and for information, but with hesitation and doubt about the course to be pursued, are put in the subjunctive first person, and rarely the third. Negative *μή*.

*ποῖ τράπωμαι*; ‘whither shall I turn?’

*εἴπω ἢ μή*; ‘shall I speak or not?’

N. B. This may change to indicative future, e. g.

*εἴπωμεν ἢ συγῶμεν*; *ἢ τί δράσομεν*; ‘shall we speak or be silent, or what shall we do?’ Eur. *Io*, 758.

§ 35. **GROUP III. Commands, Exhortations, Prohibitions, Wishes.** (G. §§ 252-254. H. §§ 866, (2), 873, 874.) Negative *μή*.

Positive *commands* are expressed by the imperative mood both in the second and third persons. λέγε, 'speak;' λεγέτω, 'let him speak.'

*Exhortations*, both positive and negative, are expressed by the *first person* of the subjunctive. ἴωμεν, 'let us go;' μὴ ἴωμεν, 'let us not go.'

*Prohibitions* of second person (i. e. negative commands) are expressed by the *present* imperative or *aorist* subjunctive. μὴ ποίει τοῦτο or μὴ ποιήσης τοῦτο, 'do not do that. So μὴ λέγε or μὴ εἶπης, 'don't say that.'

**Wishes. Future. Past or Present. Negative μή.**  
(G. § 251. H. § 870.)

A wish in the *future* is expressed by the optative. From this use came the name (Latin optare, 'to wish'). εἴθε or εἰ γάρ may be prefixed to the optative.

τεθναίην, 'may I die.' μὴ γένοιτο, 'may it not happen.' In the New Testament this is freely translated by 'God forbid.'

A wish in the *present* or *past*, which by its very nature is not or was not attained, is expressed by the *secondary tenses* of the indicative with εἴθε or εἰ γάρ.

εἶθε τοῦτο ἐποίει, 'would that (O that) he were doing (pres.) or had done (past) this.'

εἶθε τοῦτο ἐποίησε, 'would that he had done (past) this.'

'But he does not,' 'did not do it' is implied by these respectively.

#### (B.) DEPENDENT SENTENCES. GROUPS IV.-XI.

Remember here the distinction between *primary* and *secondary* tenses in the independent sentence.

#### § 36. GROUP IV. Final Sentences. (G. § 215 ff. H. § 88o ff.)

*Purpose* or *intention* is expressed by the particle *ἵνα* (ὥς or ὅπως), 'in order that,' with the subjunctive. After secondary tenses this subjunctive may become optative or remain unchanged. Theoretically the optative should always follow secondary tenses, *but the Greeks often preferred to retain the more vivid subjunctive.*

This retention of the subjunctive for the optative is common in other constructions also. It is indicated in the table by an asterisk added to the H\*, which stands for Historic or Secondary.

ἔρχεται ἵνα ἴδῃ, 'he comes that he may see,' or 'to see.'

ἦλθε ἵνα ἴδου, 'he came that he might see,' or 'to see.'

This latter might remain \*ἦλθε ἵνα ἴδῃ, 'he came to see.'

The negative is μή. 'He went away that he might not see,' or 'to avoid seeing,' ἀπῆλθε ἵνα μὴ ἴδῃ\* or ἴδου.

CAUTION : The Greek differs from the Latin here. No verb is *changed to the subjunctive* in a dependent sentence. Generally speaking, except in Oratio Obliqua infinitives, either the original *indicative* or *subjunctive* is retained or else the mood is changed to *optative*.

Purpose is frequently expressed by ὥς and future participle. See § 15. Purpose is also expressed by ὅσῃς (ὅς) and the future indicative.

‘Send some to tell,’ πέμψον τινὰς οἵτινες . . . ἀπαγγελοῦσιν, Xen. Cyr. 5. 2. 3.

§ 37. After words of *precaution* or *provision* use ὅπως and the future indicative. ὁρῶ, σκοπῶ, ‘I see,’ ‘look out for,’ are often used in this connection. The negative is μή.

‘See to it how you shall replenish the ranks,’ σκοπεῖτε ὅπως . . . ἀντιπληρώσετε τὰς τάξεις, Xen. Cyr. 2. 2. 26.

The optative is rarely substituted in secondary clauses.

§ 38. After words of **Fearing**. Here the conjunctive particle is μή ‘lest;’ therefore if a negative is required, add οὐ. If the fear has reference to the future, the subjunctive follows primary tenses. The optative may follow secondary.

‘He fears lest it may (not) happen,’ φοβεῖται μή (οὐ) γένηται.

‘He feared lest it might (not) happen,’ ἐφοβέτο μή (οὐ) γένοιτο (or γένηται\*).

**Present or Past Fear.** If what one fears is present or past, then *μή* is followed by the indicative present or past tenses.

‘I fear lest it is now happening,’ *φοβοῦμαι μὴ γίγνεται.*

‘I am afraid it happened,’ *φοβοῦμαι μὴ ἐγένετο.*

### § 39. GROUP V. Definite and Indefinite Sentences.

*Definite* sentences explain themselves. See Groups VI., VII., VIII., X., etc. *Indefinite* sentences are grouped separately only for the sake of emphasis and clearness. The distinction between a definite and an indefinite sentence should be clearly grasped by the student, to carry with him in studying the conditional, relative, and temporal sentences.

Indefiniteness may most conveniently be expressed in English by the word ‘ever,’ ‘at any time.’ In conditional sentences, for example, a definite supposition refers to a definite act; as ‘if he (now) has this he will give it;’ an indefinite refers to any one of a set of actions, as ‘if ever (or whenever) he has anything, he gives it.’

**Definite : —**

*Conditional.* ‘If death is now drawing near, it is well,’ *εἰ ἐγγὺς ἔρχεται θάνατος, καλῶς ἔχει.*

*Relative.* ‘This death, which is approaching, is welcome,’ *οὗτος ὁ θάνατος, ὃς ἐγγὺς ἔρχεται, ἡδιστός ἐστι.*

*Temporal.* ‘[Even now] when death is approaching, he rejoices,’ *χαίρει [καὶ νῦν] ὅτε θάνατος ἐγγὺς ἔρχεται.*

**Indefinite** : —

*Conditional.* 'If death (ever) comes near, no one is (ever) willing to die,' *ἤν (ἐάν) ἐγγὺς ἔλθῃ θάνατος, οὐδεὶς βούλεται ἀποθνήσκειν.*

*Relative.* 'Whatsoever form of death approaches, is always welcome,' *ὅστις ἂν ἔλθῃ θάνατος, ἡδιστός ἐστι.*

*Temporal.* 'Whenever death draws near, he rejoices,' *ὅταν ἐγγὺς ἔλθῃ θάνατος, χαίρει.*

If in these indefinite sentences a secondary tense be substituted for the primary tense in the leading clause, then, according to rule, the *ἂν* disappears and the optative is substituted for the subjunctive. We should then have in the examples above —

(1.) *ἤν ἔλθῃ* = *εἰ ἔλθοι* after *ἐβούλετο*.

(2.) *ὅστις ἂν ἔλθῃ* = *ὅστις ἔλθοι* after *ἤν*.

(3.) *ὅταν ἔλθῃ* = *ὅτε ἔλθοι* after *ἐχαιρε*.

Meaning (1.) 'if ever it came, he wished ;' (2.) 'whoever came, he was,' etc. ; (3.) 'whenever he came, he rejoiced.'

§ 40. **GROUP VI. Conditional Sentences.** (G. § 219–227. H. § 889–907.)

The 'if' clause is called the *protasis*; the statement or conclusion is called the *apodosis*. The order in which they come is not essential, but the protasis is of course always *dependent* on the apodosis.

The word for 'if' is *εἰ*. When it is followed by the subjunctive it is combined with *ἂν* and becomes *ἐάν* or *ἤν* (sometimes *ἄν*).



When negatives are needed *οὐ* is always used in the apodosis because it is a statement,<sup>1</sup> and *μή* in the protasis because it expresses a contingency.

§ 41. Conditional sentences may refer either to the *present*, the *past*, or the *future*. They may also be *particular* or *general*, that is, *definite* or *indefinite*, as we have seen in § 39. This distinction is *essential* only in present and past conditions; e. g. *ἐάν τις κλέπτην, κολάσω αὐτόν*, might be either general or particular; but for all practical purposes it is treated as particular.

We therefore find that there are four classes of particular conditions, and that the general conditions may for convenience be subdivided into present or past general suppositions, according as the apodosis contains primary or secondary tenses. This makes six forms in all.

No account is here taken of mixed conditions, etc. See G. § 227. H. § 901 ff.

**§ 42. Particular Suppositions. — A. Present and Past.**

(1) **Simple Particular Supposition.** The 'if' clause (protasis) simply makes a present or past (particular) supposition, as, 'if that is so, run;' or, 'if it rained in the night, the grass must be wet;' or, 'if this is the place, I don't like it.'

<sup>1</sup> Of course *μή* with an imperative.

Rule: Protasis has *εἰ* with indicative; apodosis indicative (or any other form of the verb).

‘If he is doing this, it is well,’ *εἰ πράσσει τοῦτο, καλῶς ἔχει.*

‘If he did that, it was well,’ *εἰ ἔπραξε τοῦτο, καλῶς εἶχεν.*

‘If that is so, fly!’ *εἰ τοῦτο οὕτως ἔχει, φεύγε!*

‘Well, if it pleases you, let us sail,’ *ἀλλ’ εἰ δοκεῖ σοι, πλέωμεν.*

§ 43. (2) **Unreal Conditions, or Suppositions Contrary to Fact.** If we wish to imply that the condition *is not* or *was not fulfilled*, then we indicate this by adding the particle *ἄν* to the past tenses of the indicative in the apodosis.

Thus, ‘if he had done this, he would have been punished,’ implies that he *did not* do it. So also, ‘if he were here they would start,’ implies that he *is not* here.

Notice that *unreality in the present* is expressed by the imperfect indicative.

‘If he were here, they would be glad,’ *εἰ ἐκεῖνος παρῆν, ἔχαιρον ἄν.*

*Unreality in the past* is expressed by the aorist (rarely pluperfect) indicative.

‘If he had done this, he would have been punished,’ *εἰ τοῦτο ἐποίησεν, ἐκολάσθη ἄν.*

## § 44. B. Future Conditions.

Future conditions are usually of two kinds. (a) One when the future case is anticipated,<sup>1</sup> or stated *vividly* or with *probability* of fulfilment. It corresponds to the (old English) 'shall' or the much neglected English subjunctive, as 'if he shall go,' or 'if he go, I shall rejoice;' 'if he shall read,' or 'if he read, I shall listen;' for which we have unfortunately substituted 'if he goes' and 'if he reads' in every-day language.<sup>2</sup>

(b) The future case may be stated in a *less vivid* form, corresponding to English 'should,' as 'If he should go,' or 'If he were to go, you would rejoice.' This is also called the *ideal* condition.<sup>3</sup>

For convenience, therefore, we may divide the future conditions into "Shall" and "Should" conditions.

## § 45. (3) 'Shall' Conditions.

(a) Rule: The apodosis has the future indicative or any other future form, like the imperative, etc.; the protasis has *έάν* (*ην, αν*) and the subjunctive.

<sup>1</sup> "Anticipatory" is the term used by Professor Gildersleeve in Trans. Am. Ph. Ass., 1876.

<sup>2</sup> Goodwin, Trans. Am. Ph. Ass., 1876, p. 88.

<sup>3</sup> "The Ideal condition is the condition of the fancy. There is often an element of wish for or against, of hope or fear. It is the great condition of illustration, and is often used in comparisons, where those untrained in Greek modes of conception would expect the *Unreal condition*." Gildersleeve, Trans. Am. Ph. Ass., 1876, p. 4.

‘If he do (shall do) this, it will be well,’ *ἐὰν πράσῃ τοῦτο, καλῶς ἔξει.*

The distinction between present and aorist subjunctive in the protasis may be illustrated by the two Latin equivalents.

*ἐὰν τοῦτο πράσῃ, si hoc faciet.*

*ἐὰν τοῦτο πράξῃ, si hoc fecerit.*

This is the most common form of the conditional.

(*b*) There is another and less usual form of the ‘shall’ conditions, i. e. *εἰ* and future indicative in protasis. This presents a “threatening or unfavorable view,” and is sometimes introduced to contrast with the *ἐὰν* and subjunctive condition (see Gildersleeve, l. c.).

*εἰ μὴ κατέξεις γλῶσσαν, ἔσται σοι κακά* (G. § 223, Note 1), ‘if you do not (shall not) restrain your tongue, you will have trouble.’

So Soph. *Ajax*, 1155, *εἰ γὰρ ποιήσεις, ἴσθι πημανούμενος*, ‘for if you shall do this, know that you will meet your ruin.’

#### § 46. (4) ‘Should’ Conditions.

Rule: The apodosis has optative and *ἄν*, the protasis has *εἰ* and the optative.

‘If he should do this (or, ‘if he were to do this’), it would be well,’ *εἰ πράσσοι (πράξειε) τοῦτο, καλῶς ἂν ἔχοι.*

§ 47. **General Suppositions.**

In general suppositions the apodosis expresses a *customary* or *repeated* action, and the protasis refers to any one of a series or class of acts.

(5) **Present General Suppositions.** Rule: Protasis *ἐάν* and subjunctive; apodosis present indicative (or some other primary form).

'If (ever) any one steals, he is (always) punished,' *ἐάν τις κλέπτῃ, κολάζεται.*

(6) **Past General Suppositions.** Rule: Protasis *εἰ* and optative; apodosis secondary indicative.<sup>1</sup>

'If any one (ever) stole, he was punished,' *εἰ τις κλέπτοι, ἐκολάζετο.*

§ 48. **GROUP VII. Causal Sentences.** (G. § 250.  
H. § 925.) 'As;' 'since;' 'because.'

These are often done into Greek by the participle; see § 15. They are also expressed by conjunctions with the indicative. The negative is *οὐ*. The most common conjunctions are 'as,' 'since,' — *ἐπειδὴ, ἐπεὶ, ὥς*; <sup>2</sup> 'because,' — *ὅτι, διότι.*

<sup>1</sup> This is really another form of the optative for the original pure subjunctive, that is, subjunctive without *ἄν*. (Gildersleeve, Pindar, O. vi. 11, and Am. Jour. Phil., vol. iii. p. 442.)

<sup>2</sup> These are also *temporal* in Group X.

‘Since I am unable to perceive . . . I have thought best,’  
 ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐ δύναμαι . . . αἰσθέσθαι . . . ἔδοξέ μοι, Anab. II.  
 v. 4.

‘I wrote this (on this account) because it was deficient,’  
 ἔγραψα δὲ αὐτὰ . . . διὰ τὸδε ὅτι . . . ἐκλιπὲς τοῦτο ἦν, Thuc.  
 I. 97.

§ 49. **GROUP VIII. Relative Sentences.** (G. §§ 229,  
 230. H. § 909.)

The antecedent of a relative may be either definite  
 or indefinite; e. g. —

(Definite) (ταῦτα) ἃ ἔχω ὁρᾶς, ‘you see what I have.’

(Indefinite) ἃ ἂν βούλωνται ἔξουσιν, ‘they will have what-  
 ever they may want.’

A relative *as such* does not affect the mood of the  
 following verb. Therefore a relative with a definite  
 antecedent may be followed by the indicative (nega-  
 tive οὐ) or *any other construction of an independent  
 sentence.*

§ 50. **Relative as Conditional, etc.** (G. § 232, 233.  
 H. § 912 ff.)

(a) The relative with an indefinite antecedent may  
 be used as the protasis of any of the six conditions  
 (see Group VI.). The negative is of course μή.

This is very common, and may be illustrated as  
 follows. If in the clause εἰὰν κλέπτη τοῦτο, instead of  
 εἰ (i. e. εἰάν = εἰ + ἄν) we put ὅς or ὅστις or ὅτε, etc.,

we change the expression from an 'if' clause to a 'who' clause or a 'when' clause, etc., without any further alteration.

*ὅστις ἂν τοῦτο κλέπτῃ*, 'whosoever shall steal this;' or,  
*ὅταν τοῦτο κλέπτῃ*, 'whenever he shall steal this,' etc.

When the subjunctive is used *ἄν* remains attached to particle or conjunction or with the pronoun; with the optative *ἄν* is dropped according to rule.

(*b*) Relative adverbs like *ὅπου*, 'where;' *ὅποι* 'whither;' *ὁπόθεν*, 'whence,' follow the rule, — *ἄν* with subjunctive after primary; optative after secondary. Cf. Temporal Sentences, § 51.

(*c*) The relative with the future indicative may be used to express purpose. This has been explained under Group IV. The negative is *μή*. G. § 236. H. § 911.

§ 51. **GROUP IX. Temporal Sentences.** 'When,' 'While,' 'Since,' 'Before,' 'After,' 'Until.' (G. §§ 229–240. H. §§ 913, 920.)

These are closely connected with relative sentences.

*ὅτε*, 'when' (pure time, usually with present, imperfect, or aorist).

*ὥς*, 'when.'

*ἐπει* and *ἐπειδὴ*, 'after,' 'after that,' 'since,' 'when.'

*ἕως*, 'until,' 'while.'

*πρίν*, 'before,' 'before that.' *οὐ . . . πρίν* = (not . . . before) *ἕως*, 'until.'

(a) In *definite* sentences the temporal conjunctions ὅτε, ὡς, ἐπεὶ, ἐπειδὴ, ἕως (and οὐ . . . πρὶν), 'until,' take the indicative mode; negative οὐ.

(b) In *indefinite* sentences they may add the particle ἄν, and take the subjunctive after primary tenses. After secondary tenses change the subjunctive to optative, omitting ἄν. Negative μή.

(c) πρὶν, meaning 'before,' takes the infinitive (regularly the aorist). To avoid ambiguity the following rule may be quoted: —

"When πρὶν *must* be translated 'before,' it *must* have the infinitive; when it *may* be translated 'until,' it *may* take the finite constructions of ἕως, 'until.'"<sup>1</sup>

Examples: —

(a) ὡς δὲ τοῦτο ἐπύθετο, ἀπῆλθε, 'when he learned this, he went away.'

ἐπειδὴ δ' ἕως ἐγένετο, διέβαινον τὴν γέφυραν, 'when it was morning they crossed the bridge,' Anab. II. iv. 24.

ἐπειδὴ δὲ συνῆλθον, λέγει ὁ Κλέαρχος τάδε, 'after that they had assembled, Clearchus spoke as follows.'

(b) ὅποτε οὖν τοὺς πρώτους κωλύωσι Ξενοφῶν λύει τὴν ἀπόφραξιν, κ. τ. λ., 'whenever they hinder the van, Xenophon removes the obstruction;' or ὅποτε οὖν τοὺς πρώτους κωλύοιεν Ξενοφῶν ἔλυε, κ. τ. λ., 'whenever they hindered the van, Xenophon removed, etc.,' Anab. IV. ii. 25.

(c) διέβησαν πρὶν τοὺς ἄλλους ἀποκρίνασθαι, 'They crossed over before the others answered,' Anab. I. iv. 16.

<sup>1</sup> Gildersleeve, *Justin Martyr*, p. 113.



§ 52. **GROUP X. Consecutive or Result Clauses.** 'So that,' 'so as.' (G. § 237. H. § 927.)

ὥστε, 'so that,' 'so as,' is often preceded by οὕτως, 'thus' (or some other word like τοιοῦτος, τοσοῦτος, etc.). Compare Latin ita . . . ut.

It may be followed by the infinitive (negative μή) to express the *natural* result; or by the indicative (negative οὐ) to *emphasize* the *actual* result.

πάντας οὕτω διατιθεῖς ἀπεπέμπετο ὥστε αὐτῷ μᾶλλον φίλος εἶναι ἢ βασιλεῖ, 'he sent them all back again in such a frame of mind as to be more friendly to him than to the king,' Anab. I. i. 5.

Indicative: ἐπιπίπτει χιὼν ἄπλετος, ὥστε ἀπέκρυψε καὶ τὰ ὅπλα καὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους, 'there was such a tremendous fall of snow that it covered up both the armor and the men,' Anab. IV. iv. 11.

The distinction between the two is often slight and may be neglected.

'Are you so senseless that you expect?' οὕτως ἀγνωμόνως ἔχετε, ὥστε ἐλπίζετε;

Here ὥστε ἐλπίζειν would mean 'so senseless as to expect.' G. § 237, Remark.

The student will more frequently employ the infinitive construction.

The construction of ὥστε, 'consequently,' 'therefore,' is not *here included*.

ὥστε μή and infinitive may be rendered by 'from . . . -ing.'

ὥστε δὲ μὴ ὀλισθάνειν ἢ ὑλῃ . . . σχήσει, 'the wood will keep (you) from slipping,' Anab. III. v. 11. Just before this was done by the articular infinitive: ἐξεί τοῦ μὴ καταδύναι, cf. § 14, *Caution*.

§ 53. **GROUP XI. Oratio Obliqua. Indirect Discourse.**  
(G. §§ 241-248; 260, 2. H. §§ 928-937, 946.)

If I say 'I am he whom you seek,' it is a *direct* statement including a relative sentence. If some one hearing the remark should repeat it to a third person, he would be apt to do so in the following words: '*He said that he was* (the one) whom *they were* seeking.'

Here the whole of the original sentence has been made dependent upon the new assertion 'he said.' In doing this several changes took place. 'That' was prefixed as a sign of quotation; 'I' and 'you' were respectively changed to the *third person*; and the *present* tenses 'am' and 'seek' were changed to the *past*.

In Latin these sentences would be, direct, (*ego*) *is sum quem conquiritis*; indirect, *dixit se esse eum quem conquirerent*, which, translated literally, but inelegantly, into English, would be, 'he said *himself to be* (the one) whom they *were* seeking.'

Now in Greek equivalents of both these constructions occur, some verbs requiring one, some the

other; while others permit either. It must be added, however, that the Greeks often preferred to retain the direct form, just as elsewhere the primary sequence may be retained even after secondary tenses.

The student fresh from Latin must be cautioned about the *mood* to be employed. If the mood of the finite verb is changed at all it becomes *optative*. Of course the accusative and infinitive construction must be remembered, but no *subjunctive* arises in Greek from Oratio Obliqua.

§ 54 The Greek construction therefore is: —

**Verbs of saying and believing**, etc., like λέγω, φημί, εἶπον, ‘say;’ νομίζω, οἶμαι, ‘believe,’ and similar verbs and expressions, take —

1. In the *leading clauses* ὅτι, ‘that,’ or ὡς, ‘how that,’ and a finite verb (opt. H.\*) (always after εἶπον),

Or accusative and infinitive (always use accusative and infinitive after φημί, οἶμαι, νομίζω, and ἡγοῦμαι). λέγω, etc. (see below), allow either construction.

2. In the *subordinate clauses* the verbs, if changed, become optative (H.\*).

εἶπον	—	ὅτι and finite verb.
λέγω	—	
φημί	—	(acc. and) infinitive.

§ 55. ἄν in Oratio Obliqua. It is important to notice the use of ἄν in indirect discourse. Its presence or absence often indicates the form of the original

sentence. In indirect discourse (statements with  $\delta\tau\iota$  and  $\acute{\omega}\varsigma$ , or questions) an indicative or optative with  $\acute{\alpha}\nu$  is retained without any change. This shows, for example, whether an apodosis belonged to an *unreal* or a 'should' (ideal) condition. But these moods may also be changed to infinitive with  $\acute{\alpha}\nu$ , as e. g. in § 56 (a).

(1) In secondary sequence (i. e. with the optative)  $\acute{\alpha}\nu$  will never be found in a subordinate sentence. E. g. in  $\epsilon\acute{\alpha}\nu$  and subjunctive,  $\delta\tau\alpha\nu$  and subjunctive, etc., both remain, or else the  $\acute{\alpha}\nu$  is dropped and the subjunctive changed to optative, making  $\epsilon\iota$  and the optative as if it were the protasis of a 'should' condition. The apodosis must here be depended upon to show the original form of the condition.

(2)  $\acute{\alpha}\nu$  with the infinitive must represent either  $\acute{\alpha}\nu$  with the optative or  $\acute{\alpha}\nu$  with a secondary tense of the indicative.

When  $\acute{\alpha}\nu$  seems to stand with the leading verb (as it does regularly with  $\omicron\lambda\mu\alpha\iota$ ), it must be transferred in thought to the dependent infinitive, no matter how far distant, and even if another  $\acute{\alpha}\nu$  is found repeated there.

§ 56. Some of the more common verbs are here mentioned with their construction.

It must be understood that the less usual or exceptional usage is purposely ignored.

(a) Verbs of **thinking, believing, and saying** take accusative and infinitive. *Always* use infinitive after ἡγοῦμαι, οἶμαι (οἶμαι), νομίζω, 'believe;' ἐλπίζω and δοκῶ, 'think,' 'expect;' δοκῶ and φαίνομαι (videor), 'seem;' φημί, 'say.' λέγω, 'say,' takes either construction.

(b) Verbs of **saying, perceiving,<sup>1</sup> and knowing** take ὅτι (ὥς) and finite verb. E. g. εἶπον (always) and λέγω, 'say;' ἀγγέλλω, 'announce;' ὁρῶ, 'see,' and ἀκούω, 'hear' (more often with participle); αἰσθάνομαι, 'perceive;' πυνθάνομαι, 'learn by inquiry;' μαυθάνω, γιγνώσκω, οἶδα, 'learn,' 'know.'

(c) Verbs of **perceiving** (both *actual* and *intellectual*<sup>1</sup> perception) take also the accusative (genitive) and participle.

(d) In addition to these two uses, some of these verbs are also used with the infinitive with a difference of meaning.

ἀκούω and πυνθάνομαι with participle, direct; with infinitive, indirect.

ἐπειδὴ δέ σου ἀκούω ταῦτα λέγοντος, 'but when I hear thee saying this,' *Protag.* 320. B. But also ἤκουσε Κῦρον ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ὄντα, *Anab.* I. iv. 5. Cf. Goodwin, note to *Anab.* I. iii. 20.

ἀκούω δὲ καὶ ἄλλα ἔθνη πολλὰ τοιαῦτα εἶναι, 'I hear that there are also many other such nations,' *Anab.* II. v. 13.

<sup>1</sup> "Verbs of perception (knowing and showing) take ὅτι or ὥς with the finite verb of intellectual perception, the participle of actual or intellectual perception." Gildersleeve, *Just. Martyr*, p. 131.

*αἰσθάνομαι* with participle, 'perceive;' with infinitive, 'believe,' 'have the opinion.'

*αἰσθάνομαί σε μέγα παρὰ βασιλεῖ δυνάμενον* (Kühner), 'I *perceive* that you are very powerful with the king.' But —

*αἰσθανόμενος αὐτοὺς μέγα παρὰ βασιλεῖ Δαρεῖω δύνασθαι*, 'believing that they were very powerful with King Darius,' Thuc. vi. 59.

*γινώσκω* with participle (*ὅτι* or *ὥς* the more common construction), 'know' or 'perceive that;' with infinitive, 'judge,' 'decide,' or 'know how to.'

*γρόντες δὲ οἱ Ἐπιδάμνιοι σὺνδεμίαν . . . τιμωρίαν οὔσαν*, 'when the Epidamnians *perceived* that there was no help,' Thuc. I. 25. But —

*ἔγνωσαν κερδαλέωτερον εἶναι*, 'they *decided* that it was more advantageous,' Anab. I. ix. 17.

*οἶδα* and *ἐπίσταμαι* with participle (or more frequently with *ὅτι* or *ὥς*), 'know that;' with infinitive, 'know how to.' For the participle in nominative, cf. below.

*οἶδα αὐτὸν ἐλθόντα*, 'I *know that* he came' (cf. Thuc. I. 69). For *ἐπίσταμαι* and *οἶδα* with *ὅτι* cf. Anab. III. ii. 20-25.

But cf. Soph. *Ajax*, 666, —

*εἰσόμεσθα μὲν θεοῖς  
εἴκειν, μαθησόμεσθα δ' Ἀτρεΐδας σέβειν,*

'We shall *know how to* yield to the gods and shall take lessons in reverencing the Atreidae.'

§ 57. (*a*) **Nominative of the Participle.** Not only may these verbs take an accusative (genitive) and participle after them, but also, when the subject is the same, the participle may be put in the nominative with the appropriate meaning; e. g. οἶδα ὄν, 'I know that I am.' ἔγνων ἡττημένος, 'I knew that I was beaten,' Ar. *Eq.* 658.

(*b*) φαίνομαι has a difference in meaning when used with participle (nominative) and with infinitive; e. g. φαίνεται ὄν, 'he manifestly is;' φαίνεται εἶναι, 'he seems to be.' So Xen. *Conv.* I. 15, ἀπεμύττετό τε καὶ τῇ φωνῇ σαφῶς κλαίειν ἐφαίνετο, 'he both blew his nose, and by the sound of his voice he seemed really to be weeping.' ἐφαίνετο κλαίωιν would have meant, 'it was clear that he was weeping' (Kühner, *Ausf. Gram.* I. p. 631).

§ 58. **Questions in Indirect Discourse.** These follow the natural rule, i. e.: After primary tenses, verb unchanged (i. e. indicative or subjunctive); after secondary, use optative (H.\*). Negative is οὐ.

§ 59. **Wishes, Commands, etc.,** are put in the infinitive. The negative is μή.

An important difference from Latin is the use of the infinitive after words of will and desire, which may for convenience be included here. βούλομαι, ἐθέλω, 'I wish;' ἀξιῶ, 'I desire;' δέομαι, 'I beg;'

κελεύω (εἶπον), 'order,' and other similar verbs take the infinitive; negative μή.

Notice this use of εἶπον as distinguished from the usual meaning, 'said.' Cf. Anab. IV. v. 4: (ὁ μάντις) εἶπε σφαγιάσασθαι τῷ ἀνέμῳ, 'the priest *ordered* that a sacrifice be made to the wind.'



P. = PRIMARY. H. = HISTORIC OR SECONDARY.			
	Conjunction, Particle, etc.	Mood, etc.	
A. INDEPENDENT SENTENCES.			
I. <i>Statements.</i>			
Assertions and questions . . . . .	. . . . .	Indicative, any tense .	
Potential . . . . .	. . . . .	Opt. + <i>άν</i> , usually pres. or	
II. <i>Deliberative</i> . . . . .			
Subjunctive . . . . .			
III. <i>Commands, wishes, etc.</i>			
Command (positive) . . . . .	. . . . .	Imperative, 2d and 3d pers	
Prohibition . . . . .	. . . . .	<i>μή</i> and Imperat. <i>pres.</i> or and Subj. <i>aorist.</i>	
Exhortation . . . . .	. . . . .	Subjunctive, 1st person .	
Wish (future) . . . . .	. . . . .	Optative . . . . .	
" (unattainable) . . . . .	. . . . .	<i>είθε</i> or <i>εί γάρ</i> w. indic. <i>sec. h</i>	
B. DEPENDENT SENTENCES.			
IV. <i>Final.</i>			
Purpose . . . . .	<i>ἵνα, ὥς, ὅπως</i> . . . . .	Subjunctive P., Optative II	
Precaution . . . . .	<i>ὅπως</i> . . . . .	Fut. indic. P. (Fut. opt. H)	
Fear (future) . . . . .	<i>μή</i> . . . . .	Subjunctive P., Optative H	
" (present or past) . . . . .	<i>μή</i> . . . . .	Indicative present or past	
V. <i>Definite and indefinite.</i>			
1. Definite . . . . .	. . . . .	See Groups VI., VIII., IX. <i>άν</i> with Subj. P.; Opt. (with <i>άν</i> ) H.*	
2. Indefinite . . . . .	<i>εἰ, ὅτε, ἐπει, ὥς</i> , etc. . . . .		
VI. <i>Conditionals.</i>			
<i>Particular. (A) Present or past.</i>		APODOSIS.	PROTASIS.
1. Simple supposition . . . . .	<i>εἰ</i> in protasis . . . . .	Ind. (Imper., etc.)	<i>εἰ</i> with In
2. Unreal or contrary to fact . . . . .	<i>εἰ</i> in protasis . . . . .	Sec. Ind. + <i>άν</i>	<i>εἰ</i> w. Sec.
(B) Future.			
(3) 'Shall' conditions ( <i>a</i> ) . . . . .	<i>εἰάν</i> in protasis . . . . .	Fut. Ind. or any future form, as Imperat., etc.	<i>εἰάν</i> with :
" " ( <i>b</i> ) . . . . .	<i>εἰ</i> in protasis . . . . .	" "	<i>εἰ</i> w. Fut
(4) 'Should' conditions . . . . .	<i>εἰ</i> in protasis . . . . .	Opt. with <i>άν</i>	<i>εἰ</i> with O
<i>General conditions.</i>			
(5) <i>a</i> . Present general . . . . .	<i>εἰάν</i> in protasis . . . . .	Pres. Indic.	<i>εἰάν</i> w. Su
(6) <i>b</i> . Past general . . . . .	<i>εἰ</i> in protasis . . . . .	Past Indic.	<i>εἰ</i> w. Opt

## f Syntax.


those marked \* the Primary Sequence may also be used.

Neg.	Remarks.	Sect.
		§ 33
οὐ	This group includes the <i>apodosis</i> (unless Imper. or Subj.) of conditionals.	
οὐ	This is equivalent in form to an <i>apodosis</i> of VI. (4) . . . . .	
μή	. . . . .	§ 34
		§ 35
μή	. . . . .	
μή	. . . . .	
μή	. . . . .	
μή	. . . . .	
μή	. . . . .	
μή	. . . . .	
μή	Also expressed by <i>δοῦναι</i> (δς) and fut. indic.; or by <i>ᾠς</i> and fut. ptc. . .	§ 36
μή	. . . . .	§ 37
οὐ	. . . . .	§ 38
οὐ	. . . . .	
	These sentences are also included under VI. (5 and 6), VIII., IX. (2). .	§ 39
μή	. . . . .	
μή	. . . . .	
ἄ. p. Prot.	A relative pronoun, etc., may take the place of <i>εἰ</i> in protasis. . . . .	§ 40
οὐ	μή . . . . .	§ 42
οὐ	μή . . . . .	§ 43
		§ 44
οὐ	μή Commonly known as the <i>Anticipatory, More Vivid, or Probable Condi-</i>	§ 45 (a)
	<i>tion</i>	
οὐ	μή . . . . .	§ 45 (b)
οὐ	μή Com'ly known as the <i>Ideal, Less Vivid, or Less Probable Fut. Condition</i>	§ 46
		§ 47
οὐ	μή { These are forms of the indefinites, V. (2) . . . . .	
οὐ	μή	

P. = PRIMARY. H. = HISTORIC OR SECONDARY.		
	Conjunction, Particle, etc.	Mood
<b>VII. CAUSAL.</b>		
Because; as, since . . . .	ὅτι, διότι, ὥς, ἐπει, ἐπειδὴ	Indic. or other dependent sentence
<b>VIII. Relatives,</b>	(ὅς, ὅστις, ὅπου, etc.). . .	
1. With definite antecedent . . . . .		No effect on following sentence
2. With indefinite antecedent . . . . .		= protasis of a conditional sentence
3. Purpose, antec. def. or indef. . . . .		Future indicative
<b>IX. Temporal.</b> . . . . .		
1. When, whilst, since, after, until . . . . .	ὥς, ὅτε, ἐπει, ἐπειδὴ, ἕως (ὅδ' . . . πρὶν = until)	
Definite . . . . .	" " "	Indicative . . .
Indefinite . . . . .	" " "	ἀνw.Subj. P. O.
2. Before . . . . .	πρὶν . . . . .	Infinitive . . .
<b>X. Consecutive.</b>		
1. Actual result . . . . .	ὥστε . . . . .	Finite verb . . .
2. Natural result . . . . .	ὥστε . . . . .	(Acc.) and Infinitive
<b>XI. Oratio Obliqua.</b>		
(1) Statements.	KIND OF PRIN. VERB.	FOLLOWING
A. (a) Main clause . . . . .	Verbs of thinking and saying . . . . .	Accusative and Infinitive
(b) " " . . . . .	Verbs of saying and perceiving, etc. . . . .	ὅτι or ὥς and Finite verb
(c) " " . . . . .	Verbs of perceiving (knowing and feeling)	Participle . . .
B. Dependent clauses . . . . .		Verb unchanged
(2) Questions . . . . .	(Interrogative word) . . . . .	Indic. P.; Optative
(3) Wishes, commands, etc. . . . .	Verbs of desiring, etc. . . . .	Acc. and infinitive

ntax. — *Continued.*

e marked \* the Primary Sequence may also be used.

g.	Remarks.	Sect.
ὅ	This idea is frequently expressed by participle without conjunction . . .	§ 48
	. . . . .	§ 49
	. . . . .	§ 50
ἢ	Cf. IV. . . . .	
	These are often included with the Relatives, VIII. . . . .	§ 51
	. . . . .	
ὅ	. . . . .	
ἢ	. . . . .	
ἢ	N. B. "When <i>πρίν</i> must mean 'before' it must take infinitive." 	§ 51 (c)
ὅ	{ ἐφ' ὅτε, 'on condition that,' may be used like ὥστε with the infinitive,	§ 52
ἢ	{ and sometimes with future indicative.	
	. . . . .	§ 53
ὅ	e. g. λέγω, and always φημί, οἶμαι, νομίζω, and ἡγοῦμαι . . . . .	§ 54
ὅ	e. g. λέγω, and always εἶπον. Also οἶδα, ἀγγέλλω, ἀκούω, etc. . . . .	§ 56
ὅ	e. g. αἰσθάνομαι, οἶδα, ἀκούω, ὁρᾶ, etc. . . . .	§ 56
ὅ	. . . . .	§ 54 (2)
ὅ	. . . . .	§ 58
ἢ	e. g. κελεύω . . . . .	§ 59

## RULES FOR CASES.

Rules for the cases are here added in a somewhat condensed form for the benefit of younger students. For fuller treatment see the Grammars. G. §§ 157-190. H. §§ 706-783.

§ 61. **Nominative.**

The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case. E. g. *ὁ ἀνὴρ τρέχει.*

§ 62. **Predicate.**

A predicate noun or adjective is in the same case as the subject.

*ὁ Κῦρος ἐστὶ βασιλεύς,* 'Cyrus is king.'

*ὁ Κῦρος ἐγένετο ἂν βασιλεύς,* 'Cyrus would have become king.'

So with a passive verb, *Κῦρος ἀπεδείχθη στρατηγός,* 'Cyrus was appointed general.'

§ 63. **Accusative Case. Direct Object (*Inner and Outer*). Motion to or toward.**

I. The *direct object* of an *active transitive* verb is in the accusative case; e. g. *φέρει τὴν ὄρνιν,* 'he brings the chicken.'

II. **Cognate Accusative.** An accusative may repeat an idea already contained in a verb (*intransitive* or *transitive*) or even in an adjective or noun.

(Intransitive verb) ἔδραμε δρόμον, 'he ran a race.'

(Transitive verb) Ξενοφῶν δὲ ὄναρ εἶδεν, 'Xenophon saw a vision.'

(Adjective) κακὸς πᾶσαν κακίαν, 'bad with all badness.'

Often the cognate idea is only implied.

τὰ ἔσχατα κινδυνεύει, 'he takes the greatest risk,' = τὸν ἔσχατον κίνδυνον κινδυνεύει.

III. **Accusative of Extent.** The accusative may denote *extent of time or space*.

(Time) ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς, 'they remained three days.'

(Space) ἐξήλανε παρασύγγας πέντε, 'he marched five leagues.'

IV. **Accusative of Specification.** (1) The accusative may be used with verbs (*even intransitive or passive*), adjectives, or nouns to denote the *part affected*, or that *in respect to which* a statement is made.

(Passive) τὸν ὀφθαλμὸν ἐκκεκομμένος, 'blind in one eye,' Dem. 247, 11.

(Intransitive) Ἕλληνές εἰσι τὸ γένος, 'they are Greeks by race.'

(Adjective) πόδας ὥκους Ἀχιλλεύς, 'swift-footed Achilles.'

(2) An accusative is often used adverbially; e. g. τέλος, 'finally;' οὐδέν, 'not at all;' τί, 'in some respect;' τί, 'why?'

V., VI., VII. **Double Accusative.** Two accusatives may be used with one verb.

**V. Double Object.** Two accusatives, usually one of the *person* and the other of the *thing*, may follow verbs of

asking,	teaching,
clothing,	concealing,
depriving,	reminding, etc.

*παῖς μέγας μικρὸν παῖδα ἐξέδυνε τὸν χιτῶνα*, 'a large boy stripped a small boy of his tunic,' Xen. *Cyr.* 1, 3, 17.

When the verb becomes passive the *thing* remains accusative.

**VI. Object and Predicate.** An accusative may be predicated of the object after verbs of naming, making, choosing, considering, etc.

*Δαρείος Κῦρον σατράπην ἐποίησε*, 'Darius made Cyrus viceroy.'

When the verb becomes passive, both accusatives become nominative. See § 62.

**VII. Object and Cognate.** Verbs of *doing anything to* or *saying anything of* a person or thing may take two accusatives, one the direct object and the other cognate.

*ταυτί με ποιοῦσι*; 'are they doing these things to me?' Ar. *Vesp.* 696.

Often the 'thing' is expressed by an adverb, e. g. *κακῶς λέγει αὐτόν*, 'he speaks ill of him,' i. e. *κακῶς* = *κακά*.

VIII. (1) The accusative always follows the prepositions (ἀνά), εἰς (= ἐς), and (with persons) ὡς.

ἀφίκετο ὡς Περδίκκαν καὶ εἰς τὴν Χαλκιδικὴν, 'he came to Perdiccas and to the Chalcidic land,' Thuc. 4, 79 (ἐς in text).

NOTE. (α) In epic and lyric poets ἀνά is also used with the dative, meaning 'upon.' With the accusative the student will find it (frequent in Xenophon and Herodotus) as the opposite or correlative of κατά with accusative, meaning, 'up along,' 'through,' 'by,' 'to the extent of.'

ἀνὰ τὸν ποταμόν, 'up the river;' ἀνὰ πᾶσαν τὴν ἡμέραν, 'all through the day;' but ἀνὰ πᾶσαν ἡμέραν, 'day by day;' ἀνὰ πέντε παρασάγγας, 'at the rate of five leagues,' i.e. 'by fives;' ἀνὰ κράτος, 'at the top of one's speed,' Anab. I. x. 15.

(β) ἐς is common for εἰς in Ionic, poets, and Thucydides.

The accusative is also one of the cases employed after (ἀμφί), διά, κατά, μετά, ὑπέρ, ἐπί, παρά, περί, πρὸς, ὑπό.

NOTE. (γ) The student will find ἀμφί and accusative chiefly in Xenophon and poets. Also, however, in the phrase οἱ ἀμφί τῶνα, e. g. Plato, *Hipp. Maj.* 281, C., οἱ ἀμφὶ Θαλῆν, 'Thales and the other philosophers of his school.'

(2) Many *intransitive* verbs become *transitive* when compounded with a preposition, and take the accusative.

διαβαίνουνσι τὸν ποταμόν, 'they are crossing the river.'

Note also that when a *transitive* verb is compounded with a preposition, both parts may take an *accusative*.



ὑπερίνεγκαν τὸν . . . ἰσθμὸν τὰς ναῦς, 'they carried the boats over the isthmus,' Thuc. 3, 81.

IX. An accusative follows the adverbs of swearing νή and μά, 'by:.' e.g. νή τὸν Δία, 'yes, by Zeus;' μὰ τὸν Δία, 'no, by Zeus.'

X. **Accusative and Infinitive.** The *subject* of the infinitive is in the accusative case.

τὸν Κῦρον εἶναι βασιλέα, (he says that) 'Cyrus is king.'  
τὸ ἡμῶς εἶναι θνητούς, 'the fact that we are mortal.'

§ 64. **Genitive Case.** Meanings: 'of;,' 'from;,' 'out of,' etc.

The genitive has two main usages.

1. *As a real genitive (of)*, serving to define more closely a noun (or verb, adjective, etc.).

2. *As the ablative genitive (from)*; the genitive has absorbed the 'whence' meaning of the lost ablative.

#### I. **Adnominal Genitive.**

A noun (not in apposition) limiting the meaning of another noun is put in the genitive. This includes

1. The *possessive* genitive.

ὁ Ἐπύαξ<sup>ης</sup> ἀνὴρ, 'Epyaxa's husband.'

2. The *subjective* genitive.

ὁ τῶν βαρβάρων φόβος τῶν Ἑλλήνων, 'the barbarians' fear of the Greeks;,' i. e. the fear felt by the barbarians.

3. The *objective* genitive.

ὁ τῶν βαρβάρων φόβος τῶν Ἑλλήνων, 'the barbarians' fear of the Greeks ;' i. e. felt towards the Greeks.

This genitive often has the translation of 'for' in English; e. g. πόθος τῆς πόλεως, 'a longing for their city.'

4. The *partitive* genitive. This genitive denotes the *whole* after words denoting a part.

τῶν πολεμίων τὸ πολὺ, 'the greater part of the enemy.'

So ἦν δὲ τούτων τῶν σταθμῶν, 'now there were some of these day's journeys,' Anab. I. v. 7.

5. The *genitive of material*.

δύο χοίνικας ἀλφίτων, 'two quarts of meal.'

6. The *genitive of measure*.

μισθὸς τριῶν μηνῶν, 'three months' pay.'

II. **Predicate genitive.** (1) The limiting genitive may be used as a predicate.

αἱ κῶμαι Παρυσάτιδος ἦσαν, 'the villages belonged to Parysatis,' Anab. I. iv. 9.

(2) The *partitive* genitive is also often found as a predicate after verbs of calling, etc.

Σόλων τῶν ἐπτὰ σοφιστῶν ἐκλήθη, 'Solon was called one of the seven wise men.'

With this compare Acc. Rule No. VI.

## GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

III. The genitive may be used as the *object* of a verb. This is often the case when the verb affects the object only in part. *Genitive meaning 'of.'*

Such verbs are those meaning 'to share,' 'enjoy,' 'hit,' 'miss,' 'aim,' 'begin,' 'lead,' 'rule,' 'take hold of,' 'touch,' 'perceive,'<sup>1</sup> 'hear,' 'see,' 'taste,' 'smell,' 'remember,' 'forget.'

Examples:

τῆς πολιτείας μεταδιδόναι, 'to give a share in the citizenship,' Lys. 25, 3.

ἄρχειν τῆς πληγῆς, 'to strike the first blow.'

ἀκούω τούτου λέγοντος, 'I hear him speaking.'

ὡς ὥσφρανο τάχιστα τῶν καμήλων οἱ ἵπποι . . . ἀνέστρεφον, 'quick as ever the horses caught scent of the camels they wheeled around,' Hdt. I. 80.

IV. Also with verbs denoting **separation, comparison, source**. *Ablative genitive (from)*.

1. Such verbs are those meaning 'to deprive,' 'to remove,' 'to spare,' 'to release,' 'to abandon,' 'to differ,' 'to surpass,' 'to be inferior to,' 'to be full of,' 'to want.'<sup>2</sup>

Examples:

ἐπίσχεσ τοῦ δρόμου, 'stop running!' Ar. Av. 1200.

φείδου τοῦ πεσόντος, 'spare the fallen.'

<sup>1</sup> Verbs of perception (hearing, seeing, etc.) are also classed among those governing genitive denoting 'whence.'

<sup>2</sup> Verbs of fullness and want are sometimes classed under III.

καὶ τούτου . . . οὐχ ἡττησόμεθα, 'and we shall not be inferior to him,' Anab. II. iii. 23.

δέομαι ὑμῶν, 'I beg of you,' Lys. 25, 3.

ἐδέησε ὀλίγου, 'he lacked little' (i. e. 'came near'), Xen.

2. The genitive may denote the *source* from which anything is obtained, often with an accusative of the thing.

ἄνακτος αὐτοῦ πάντα πεύσομαι λόγον, 'I shall learn the whole story from my lord himself,' Aesch. *Ag.* 582.

#### V. Genitive of **cause, crime, or value.**

1. The genitive denotes the cause, especially with verbs of praise, pity, anger, and revenge.

ἐαυτὸν εὐδαιμονίζει τῆς μεταβολῆς, 'he congratulates himself on his change of abode,' Pl. *Rep.* 516, c.

οὐ ζηλῶ σε τῆς παιδείσεως, 'I don't envy you your education,' Ar. *Thesm.* 175.

2. The genitive of cause is used in *exclamations*.

ὦ Πόσειδον, τοῦ χειμῶνος, 'Poseidon! what a storm!'

Ἡράκλεις, τῆς ἀκριβολογίας, 'Heracles! what fine distinctions,' Luc. *Vit. Auct.* 26.

3. Verbs of *accusing, acquitting, condemning, and convicting* take the genitive of the crime.

δώξομαί σε δειλίας, 'I will indict you for cowardice,' Ar. *Eq.* 368.

N. B. Compounds of *κατά* take genitive of person and accusative of crime or punishment.

4. Verbs of *buying*, *selling*, and *valuing* take the genitive of *price* or *value*.

πόσου δέ ἐστι; 'how much is he?'

εἴκοσι μνῶν, 'twenty minae.'

πολλοῦ λέγεις, 'you name a high price.'

VI. **Genitive after Compound Verbs.** Verbs compounded with (the appropriate) prepositions may take the genitive.

ὑπερεφάνησαν τοῦ λόφου, 'they appeared above the hill,'  
Thuc. IV. 93.

More often a preposition (the same or another) follows with its appropriate case.

(Without prep.) πρὶν ἂν Ζεὺς ἐκπέσῃ τυραννίδος, 'till Zeus fall from his sovereignty,' Aesch. *Prom.* 775.

(With prep.) ἐκ τοῦ σταυρώματος ἐξέπιπτον, 'they rushed forth from the stockade,' Xen.

#### GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

VII. The *objective* genitive follows many verbal *adjectives* or *adverbs* derived from them.

ἐμπειρος κακῶν, 'experienced in misfortune.'

So adverbs, οἱ ἐμπείρως αὐτοῦ ἔχοντες, 'those well acquainted with him.'

These adjectives are chiefly kindred to verbs which *take the genitive*; see above.

Some of the more common are the following, with their opposites: —

*μνήμων*, ‘mindful of;’ *ἐγκρατής*, ‘master of;’ *ἐμπειρος*, ‘experienced in;’ *ἴδιος*, ‘peculiar to;’ *κοινός*, ‘in common with;’ *ιερός*, ‘sacred to;’ *πλήρης* and *μεστός*, ‘full of;’ *ἐνδεής*, ‘lacking in;’ *μέτοχος*, ‘partaking of;’ *ἄξιος*, ‘worthy of;’ *αἷτιος*, ‘guilty of.’

The student will bear in mind that the objective genitive is often to be translated in English by ‘for,’ ‘in,’ etc.

VIII. Comparatives, whether adjectives or adverbs, take the genitive without ἤ, ‘than.’ Cf. No. IV.

*ὦτά ἐστι ἀπιστότερα ὀφθαλμῶν*, ‘ears are more untrustworthy than eyes,’ Hdt. I. 8.

IX. **Adverbs.** Besides the use of adverbs in Nos. VII. and VIII., the genitive is used with many adverbs of place and time, such as *ποῦ*; ‘where?’ *ποῖ*; ‘whither?’ *οὐδαμοῦ*, ‘nowhere;’ *ἐντός*, *εἴσω*, ‘within;’ *ἐκτός*, *ἔξω*, ‘without;’ *μεταξύ*, ‘between;’ *ἐγγύς*, *πλησίον*, ‘near;’ *ἄνω*, ‘up;’ *κάτω*, ‘down;’ *πρόσθεν*, ‘in front;’ *ὀπίσθεν*, ‘behind;’ *ὀψέ*, ‘late;’ *πολλάκις*, ‘frequently.’ E. g.

*πηνίκα ἐστὶ τῆς ἡμέρας*; ‘what time of day is it;’ Ar. *Av.* 1498.

X. Genitive with **prepositions**. The *genitive only* is used after the prepositions *ἀντί*, *ἀπό*, *ἐξ*, and *πρό*.

It is one of the cases used after *διά*, *κατά*, *μετά*, *ὑπέρ*, and *ἐπί*, *παρά*, *περί*, *πρός*, *ὑπό*. *ἀμφί* with the genitive is rare in prose.

The "improper" prepositions *ἄνευ*, 'without;,' *πλήν*, 'except;,' *ἄχρι* and *μέχρι*, 'until;,' *ἕνεκα*, 'for the sake of,' take the genitive.

**XI. Genitive of Time.** The genitive denotes the time *within which* anything takes place; e. g. *ἡμέρας*, 'by day;,' *νυκτός*, 'by night;,' *θέρους*, 'in summer.'

*οὐ δέκα ἡμερῶν*, 'not within ten days.' Cf. also the use of dative with *ἐν*, *Anab. I. vii. 18*, *ἐν ταύταις ταῖς ἡμέραις*. So *ἐν θέρει*, 'in summer.'

**XII. Genitive Absolute.** A noun and a participle may stand by themselves in the genitive.

*τούτων οὕτως ἐχόντων*, *χαίρω*, 'since this is so, I rejoice.'

§ 65. **Dative Case.** Meanings: 'to,' 'for,' 'in,' 'at,' 'by,' 'with.'

The dative case has absorbed many of the meanings of the lost ablative and the locative case. It may therefore be considered:

1. As a real dative. 'To' or 'for.'
2. As an ablative dative. 'By,' 'with,' etc.
3. As a locative dative. 'In,' 'at.'

**CAUTION.** Do not express *motion to* or *toward* by the dative, but by a preposition and accusative.

I. The dative is the case of the **Indirect Object**.

1. After *transitive* verbs (translate 'to').

τὴν ἐπιστολὴν δίδωσι πιστῷ ἀνδρί, 'he gives the letter to a trusty man.'

2. After many *intransitives* (omit 'to'), meaning  
'To benefit,' 'befit,' and 'advise,'  
'To serve,' 'obey,' and 'exhort,'  
'To reproach,' 'envy,' and 'abuse,'  
and their likes and opposites.

ἐλοιδορεῖτο αὐτῷ, 'he railed-at him.'

3. The Dative of Interest.

(a) The dative of interest or reference may generally be translated 'for.' It may qualify a whole sentence or, like the possessive genitive, a single word.

τὰ ὄπλα τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐπὶ ἀμαξῶν ἤγοντο, 'the soldiers had their arms carried for them on wagons.' τῶν στρατιωτῶν would have meant possession only.

τοῖσιν ἀνέστη, 'he rose up for (i. e. to address) them,' H.

(b) Here belongs the "ethical" dative of the personal pronouns.

ὦ μήτερ, ὡς καλός μοι ὁ πάππος, 'O mother, how handsome my grandfather is!' Xen. Cyr. I, 3, 2.

(c) The dative of *possession* is used with εἰμί, γίγνομαι, etc.

ἵππος ἐστὶ (i. e. ἐστίν) ἐμοί, 'I have a horse.'

(d) *Agent*. The dative *may* express the agent after passive verbs in the perfect and pluperfect, and *does so regularly* after the verbal adjective in -τέος.



ταῦτα ὑμῖν ποιητέον ἐστίν, 'this must be done by you.'

Otherwise the agent is expressed by *ὑπό* and genitive.

4. The dative may follow *adjectives* and *adverbs* of kindred meaning to the verbs which take the dative.

τῷ ἐμῷ ἀδελφῷ πολέμιος, ἐμοὶ δὲ φίλος καὶ πιστός, 'hostile to my brother, friendly and faithful to me.'

II. Dative of **Association** and **Accompaniment** (ablative dative).

1. The dative is used with all words of *resemblance*, *union*, and *approach*. This includes verbs, adjectives, adverbs, and nouns.

μάχεσθαι τοῖς Θηβαίοις, 'to fight with the Thebans.

ὁμοία ταῖς δούλαις ἐσθής, 'raiment like (that of) the slaves.'

2. The dative denotes that by which any person or thing is accompanied.

ἐξελαύνει . . . ἰδροῦντι τῷ ἵππῳ, 'he rides up with his horse in a sweat,' Anab. I. viii. 1.

This use is frequent in military phrases.

ἐλαύνει . . . συντεταγμένῳ τῷ στρατεύματι παντί, 'he marches with all the army drawn up,' Anab. I. vii. 14.

III. The *dative only* is used with the prepositions *ἐν* (and *σύν*).

Although Xenophon frequently uses *σύν*, the student must use it but seldom. It is not frequent in Attic prose. Use the *dative alone*, or *ἔχων*, etc.

The dative is one of the cases used with *ἐπί*, *ἰσά*, *πρός*, *ὑπό*.

Examples of *ἐν* : ‘*ἐν νήσῳ*, ‘on an island ;’ *ἐν ὄπλοις*, ‘under arms ;’ *ἐν τῇ ὑπερβολῇ*, ‘during the crossing ;’ *ἐν ὀργῇ*, ‘in anger ;’ *ἐν Ἰσσοῖς*, ‘at Issi.’

IV. Many verbs compounded with *ἐν*, *σύν*, or *ἐπί*, and some with *πρός*, *παρά*, *περί*, and *ὑπό* take the dative ; e. g. *προσέβαλον ἀλλήλοις*, ‘they attacked each other,’ Thuc. ; but we also find *πρὸς ἀλλήλους*.

V. The dative denotes *cause*, *manner*, *means*, *instrument*, *respect*, and *degree of difference*.

1. *Cause* : *τοῦτ’ ἐποίησεν ἀγνοία*, ‘he did it from ignorance.’ This is also expressed by *ὑπό* and genitive : *ὑπ’ ἀγνοίας*.

2. *Manner* : *ἐπῆλθον πολλῷ θορύβῳ*, ‘they came on with much confusion.’

3. *Means* or *instrument* : *αὐτὸν ἀκοντίζει παλτῷ*, ‘he strikes him with a javelin.’

4. *Respect* : *τοσοῦτον πλήθει περιῆν*, ‘so much was he superior in numbers,’ Anab. I. viii. 13.

5. *Degree of difference* : *τῇ κεφαλῇ μείων*, ‘a head shorter.’ *τοσοῦτῳ ἄμεινον*, ‘(by) so much the better.’

VI. The dative of **Time** (Locative dative).

The particular day, night, month, year, or festivals, etc., may be put in the dative with an adjective and without a preposition ; e. g. *ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ*, ‘that day.’ *Παναθηναίοις*, ‘at the Panathenaea.’

Otherwise add preposition ἐν, 'at,' 'in,' 'on;' e. g. ἐν θέρει, 'in summer;' ἐν τῷ παρόντι, 'at present.'

In *poetry* the locative dative is often used without the prepositions ἐν, παρά, etc. Always add preposition in *prose*.

#### § 66. Vocative Case.


The vocative is the case of direct address.

ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, 'fellow soldiers.'

In Greek ὦ is usually prefixed unless the speaker is in haste or under great excitement, as in threats etc.; e. g. ἄνθρωπε, τί ποιεῖς; 'fellow! what are you doing?' Xen. *Cyr.* 2, 2, 7.

Generally speaking the omission or insertion of ὦ is exactly the reverse of the English usage.

§ 67. **A few Rules of Accent for Beginners.**

 For fuller rules, with exceptions, see foot-notes.

The following summary of accent purposely ignores that which is exceptional and difficult to classify. Additional rules, explanations, and exceptions are added in foot-notes for more advanced students. While in some classes of nouns no satisfactory rules can be formulated, it is well for the student to realize at once that the *great majority* of Greek words in common use are accented according to well-established rules. This is the case with all verbs, participles, prepositions, and regular adverbs, and with many important categories of nouns and adjectives, both simple and compound.

The student should be taught to recognize that the accent in many instances has an organic connection with the formation of the word, — e. g. its derivation from noun or verb ; its active or passive meaning ; its growth from two or more simple words, or from one suffix or several. In this way a habit of observation and association may be formed, which will incidentally bring with it much more than a mere knowledge of accents.

In nouns, pronouns, and adjectives the rules given are for the nominative case, subject of course to the regular changes due to inflection.

It will be taken for granted that the student has already been taught the preliminary laws of Greek accent as given in the grammars. (G. §§ 21-29; H. §§ 95-120 : see also H. § 548 ff.) For convenience, however, some of the most common terms in use will be here given, with examples, and an explanation of the term 'recessive accent.'

**I. Recessive Accent.<sup>1</sup>**

By recessive accent is meant a tendency in Greek to throw the accent back from the end of the word

<sup>1</sup> This term is here retained pending the proof of objections to it or the invention of a better term. For a discussion of the subject, see

toward the beginning. This tendency is found in many classes of words. With verbs, for example, it is the rule, and in compound words it is the prevailing accentuation. It assumes various forms according to the quantity of the syllables.

If the last syllable is short the accent retreats to the antepenult, e. g. ἔχετε, σύνδουλος, or in dissyllabic words becomes circumflex on the penult if that is long, e. g. εἶχον, βῶλος, if the penult is short the accent is acute on the penult, e. g. ἔχε, τρόπος. If the last syllable is long the accent can retreat no farther than the acute on the penult, e. g. εἰχέτην, ἀνθρώπου.

If the word is a monosyllable, the accent, *if recessive*, will be circumflex, e. g. βῆν (= ἔβην), γῆ.

From these examples it will be seen that the *position* of the accent, *when recessive*, is controlled by the quantity of the final syllable, and the *kind* of accent by the quantity of the syllable on which it falls (of course within the limits to which the circumflex accent is confined).

If, now, the student will accustom himself to think of a short syllable as the unit of measure, and a long syllable as containing two such units, the following principles will become clear.

The acute accent in Greek<sup>1</sup> holds out, so to speak, over *three* such units only; hence the following

Bloomfield, Amer. Jour. of Philol., vol. iv. and vol. ix. Also Wheeler, "Der Griechische Nominalaccent," Strassburg, 1885.

<sup>1</sup> This is not the case in English.

Rule: *The acute cannot retreat beyond the antepenult.*

The circumflex accent may be described as a method of representing that the acute accent stands on the *first half* of a syllable long by nature; e. g.  $\hat{\omega} = \acute{\omega}$  or  $\acute{o} + o$ . From the rule just given we therefore obtain the following

Rule: *The circumflex can retreat only as far as the penult, and that too only when the last syllable is short.*

$\beta\acute{\omega}\lambda\omicron\varsigma = \acute{\underbrace{\omega}}_{\underbrace{\lambda\omicron\varsigma}} (3, 2, 1)$ ; but  $\beta\acute{\omega}\lambda\omicron\upsilon = \underbrace{\acute{\omega}}_{\underbrace{\lambda\omicron\upsilon}} (4, 3, 2, 1)$ ; so  $\acute{\alpha}\nu\theta\rho\acute{\omega}\pi\omicron\upsilon$ ,  $\acute{\alpha}\xi\iota\omicron\upsilon$ , etc. In long monosyllables the accent, *when recessive*, retreats upon the first half; e. g.  $\beta\grave{\eta}\nu = \acute{\underbrace{\eta}}_{\underbrace{\nu}}$ ,  $\gamma\grave{\eta}$ , etc.

One puzzling exception occurs. In recessive accent of words of more than two syllables, the Greek disregarded the *quantity of the penult*, and allowed the acute to stand on the *fourth* unit from the end in words with a long penult; e. g.  $\acute{\epsilon}\chi\eta\tau\epsilon$ ,  $\acute{\alpha}\nu\theta\rho\omega\pi\omicron\varsigma = \acute{\underbrace{\omega}}_{\underbrace{\lambda\omicron\pi\omicron\varsigma}} (4, 3, 2, 1)$ , but genitive  $\acute{\alpha}\nu\theta\rho\acute{\omega}\pi\omicron\upsilon$ . This has not yet been satisfactorily explained.<sup>1</sup> The rule in full therefore is: —

**Rule for Recessive Accent.** *The accent, if recessive, is placed as far from the end of the word as the last syllable permits, counting the penult as a unit whether long or short.*  $\acute{\alpha}\nu\theta\rho\omega\pi\omicron\varsigma$ ,  $\acute{\alpha}\nu\theta\rho\acute{\omega}\pi\omicron\upsilon$ ,  $\acute{\epsilon}\chi\epsilon\tau\omicron\nu$ ,  $\acute{\epsilon}\iota\chi\acute{\epsilon}\tau\eta\nu$ ,  $\acute{M}\omicron\upsilon\sigma\alpha$ ,  $\acute{M}\omicron\upsilon\sigma\eta\varsigma$ ,  $\acute{M}\omicron\upsilon\sigma\acute{\omega}\nu (= \acute{\alpha}\omega\nu)$ .

<sup>1</sup> There may be observed in the language a disinclination to the paroxytone accent of trochaic endings, or, more plainly, to accenting the penult of trochaic polysyllables; e. g.  $\acute{\epsilon}\gamma\omega\gamma\epsilon$ , ( $\acute{\epsilon}\gamma\acute{\omega}$  and  $\dagger\gamma\epsilon$ ). So also  $\acute{\lambda}\omicron\gamma\omicron\sigma\omicron\pi\omicron\iota\acute{\omicron}\varsigma$ , etc.

2. **Oxytone** (ὀξύς, 'sharp,' and τόνος). The acute on the ultima is called oxytone. *χῆν, χηνός, βασιλεύς.*

3. **Paroxytone** (παρά +). The acute on the penult is called paroxytone. *παρθένος, πηλίκος, πολίτης, τούτου.*

4. **Proparoxytone** (πρό +). The acute on the antepenult is called proparoxytone. *ἄνθρωπος, ἡμέτερος, ἔλαθον.*

5. **Perispomenon** (περισπάω, 'turn around,' i. e. ~ ^). The circumflex on the ultima is called perispomenon. *Ζεῦ, τιμῶν, ὀπλιτῶν.*

6. **Properispomenon** (πρό +). The circumflex on the penult is called properispomenon. *οὗτος, ἐκεῖνος, προσεῖπε.*

7. **Barytone** (βαρύς, 'deep,' +). A word is called barytone when it has no accent on the last syllable. See nos. 3, 4, 6.

8. **Proclitic** (πρό + κλίνω, 'incline'). A proclitic is a word which throws its accent forward upon the following word. The proclitics are

- (a) The forms of the article without τ, i. e. ὁ, ἡ, οἱ, αἱ.
- (b) The four prepositions εἰς (ἐς), ὡς, ἐκ (ἐξ), ἐν.
- (c) The conjunctions εἰ, 'if' and ὥς, 'as.'
- (d) The negative οὐ (οὐκ, οὐχ).

9. **Enclitic** (ἐν + κλίνω). An enclitic is a word which throws its accent back upon the preceding word. For rules of accent see grammar (G. § 28, 1, 2, 3. H. §§ 115, 116).

The most common enclitics are :

- (a) The pronouns μοῦ, μοί, μέ, σοῦ, σοί, σέ, οὖ, οἶ, ἐ, σφίσι.
- (b) The indefinite τις throughout.
- (c) The present indicative of εἰμί and φημί (except εἶ and φῆς).
- (d) Indefinite adverbs like πού, ποθέν, ποτέ, etc.
- (e) The particles γέ, τέ, τοί, πέρ, and -δε.

§ 68.<sup>1</sup> **Verbs** have recessive accent; e. g. λύετον, λῦε.

✎ But the accent in compound verbs cannot precede the augment, e. g. προσεῖπον, nor precede the syllable of the word

<sup>1</sup> § 68. **EXCEPTIONS.** 1. Contracts are *apparent* exceptions. G. § 24; H. § 105.

2. For accent of enclitics see G. §§ 27, 28; H. §§ 113-119.

3. The following *infinitives* accent the penult :—

First aorist active; e. g. βουλευσαι.

The perfect passive (middle); e. g. λελυσθαι.

All infinitives in -ναι; e. g. λευκέναι, λυθῆναι, ἰστάναι, etc.

The second aorist middle; e. g. λαβέσθαι; and the active, which is properispomenon because contract; e. g. λαβείν > λαβεῖν. G. § 26 (notes); H. § 389, 390.

4. The following *imperatives* are irregular. G. § 26. H. § 387.

(a) The second aorist middle second singular is perispomenon; e. g. λαβοῦ; but when compounded with a dissyllabic preposition the accent is recessive; e. g. κατάρθου.

(b) The second aorist active in five verbs is oxytone, i. e. ἰδέ, εἰπέ, ἐλθέ, εἶρε, and λαβέ. But not their compounds, which are regular.

5. In optatives of the μι inflection the accent cannot precede the mood suffix -ι-; e. g. ἰσταῖτε. H. § 388.



prefixed which originally had an accent, e. g. ἀπόδος (except when the vowel is lost, e. g. πάρειμι), nor precede the first prefixed member, e. g. συνέκδος.

§ 69.<sup>1</sup> **Participles** have recessive accent; e. g. λύσας, λύσασσα, λύσαν, λυόμενος, λύων.

The following are important exceptions:

1. All participles in -ας (except first aorist active); all in -εις, -υς, -ους, -ως, and second aorist active in -ων are oxytone; e. g. ἰστάς, τιθείς, δεικνύς, διδούς, λελυκώς, λαβών.

2. Perfect passive (or middle) participles are paroxytone; e. g. λελυμένος.

§ 70.<sup>2</sup> **Adverbs** are accented like the corresponding forms of the adjective; e. g. σοφῶς (adjective, gen. pl. σοφῶν), ἀληθῶς (ἀληθῶν), σοφώτερον, σοφώτατα, ἀληθέστερον, ἀληθέστατα, ἥδιον, ἥδιστα.

§ 71.<sup>3</sup> **Prepositions** are oxytone; e. g. ἀνά, ἀντί, ἐπί, κατά, etc.

<sup>1</sup> § 69. Contract participles are apparent exceptions; e. g. φιλῶν = φιλέων).

<sup>2</sup> § 70. Irregular adverbs, formed by adding suffixes, etc., vary too much to be reduced to rule. It will be useful to notice *enclitic* adverbial endings like -θι, -θεν, -θε, (-φι, -φιν), etc., multiplicatives in -άκις, oxytones in -δόν, -αδόν, -ηδόν, and others.

<sup>3</sup> § 71. The only exceptions are the four proclitics, ἐκ, ἐν, εἰς, and ὡς, and five of the "improper" prepositions, i. e. ἀνευ, ἄτερ, ἕχρι, μέχρι, and ἕνεκα, which are recessive.

Except also when they 'suffer' anastrophe. G. § 23 (2); H. § 109. For the true explanation of anastrophe see Bloomfield, Am. Jour. Phil., iv. 24.

§ 72.<sup>1</sup> **Pronouns.**

1. *Personal* and *reflexive* pronouns are oxytone. αὐτός is here included. E. g. ἐγώ, σύ, οὐ (acute > circumflex in genitive and dative), ἐμαυτοῦ, σεαυτοῦ, ἐαυτοῦ (αὐτοῦ).

2. *Demonstratives* accent the penult; e. g. οὗτος, ὅδε, ἐκεῖνος.

3. *Interrogative* and *relative* pronouns are accented on the first syllable; e. g. τίς; (τίνος;), ὅς, ὅστις.

§ 73. **Nouns.**

To understand the accent of nouns (or adjectives) it is usually necessary to know whether the word is simple or compounded. In many classes of words the accent changes in composition. The following classification may be made.

1. Uncompounded: (a) Monosyllables. (b) Polysyllables.
2. Compounds.

**First Declension (Uncompounded).**

N. B. No masculine is oxytone except *some verbal* derivatives in -της.

<sup>1</sup> § 72. 1. Possessive adjective pronouns vary; e. g. ἐμός, σός, τός, but those in -τεpos are recessive, e. g. ἡμέτερος, etc.; see comparatives.

2. Also compounds of οὗτος, e. g. τοιοῦτος.

EXCEPTIONS. (a) The comparative and superlative forms ἔτερος and ἑκαστος are recessive according to rule, § 77 (3).

(b) when *δemonstrativum* is added the accent is oxytone, e. g. οὗτοςί, τουτοῦί.

3. Also the corresponding pronominal adjectives, e. g. πόσος, ποῖος, etc. (but πηλίκος). When the syllable δ- is prefixed, as in δ-πόιος, δ-πόσος, the accent is unchanged.

4. The indefinite *τις* either loses its accent or is accented on the last syllable (i. e. grave or circumflex).

I. *Masculines*.<sup>1</sup>

1. All words in *-ας* are paroxytone ; e. g. *ταμίας*, *Ξενίας*.

2. All words in *-ης* (*-της*, *-ιτης*, *-ωτης*, etc.) are paroxytone ; e. g. *τοξότης*, *στρατιώτης*, *οϊκέτης*, *όπλιτης*, *Πέρσης*.

<sup>1</sup> § 73. I. The following rules are more exact for nouns in *-ης*.

1. Contracts are perispomenon ; e. g. *Ἑρμῆς*.

2. *Nominal derivatives*. All derivatives from nouns and adjectives are paroxytone ; e. g. *στρατιώτης*.

3. *Paroxytone verbal derivatives in -της*. All with a short penult are paroxytone except *κριτής* and *εὔρετής*, also those which add *-της* to the pure unstrengthened verb stem ; e. g. *οϊκέτης*, *ὄψαν-της*.

4. *Oxytone verbal derivatives in -της*. All with a lengthened vowel in the penult ; *some* from liquid verbs ; polysyllables in *-σ-της* ; those in *-κ-της* (from verbs in *-άζω*, etc.). Examples : *γεννητής*, 'a parent' (vs. *γεννήτης*, 'a clansman') *θεατής*, *βουλευτής*, *καθαρτής*, *δικαστής*, *ὄρχηστής*, *σαλπικτής*.

☞ There are a few real or apparent exceptions to the above rules, e. g. *αἰχμητής*, *κυβερνήτης*, *σφενδονήτης* (√?). *ἐθελοντής*, and *ἐκοντής*, used like adjectives and derived from participial forms, are oxytone. See Götting, *Accentlehre*, p. 125.

II. Add 3. Abstracts in *-ιά* and *-εία* are recessive ; e. g. *σοφία*, 'wisdom ;' *ἀλήθεια*, 'truth.'

4. Collectives and concrete nouns in *-ια* and *-εια* are oxytone ; e. g. *ἰωνιά*, 'a bed of violets ;' *στρατιά*, 'an army ;' *παιδιά*, 'a game.'

5. Other feminines are chiefly recessive.

Add III. COMPOUNDS.

1. All with a long ultima (except dissyllabic oxytones not compounded with prepositions) retain the accent of their last factor ; e. g. *φιλο-σοφία*, *ὑπο-κριτής* (but *ὄνειρο-κρίτης*, *ἱστο-δόκη* (δοκή)).

2. All with short ultima have recessive accent when compounded ; e. g. *πρόπειρα* (√πειρα).

3. When the last member does not exist as a separate word in *this form*, the accent is recessive ; e. g. *κωμῶδης*, *εὐσεβεία*.

3. Except certain verbal derivatives which are oxytone, i. e.

(a) *Two only* with a *short* penult, i. e. κρι-τής and εὔρετής.

(b) (Nearly) *all* with a *long* penult; e. g. ποιη-τής (√ποιέω), δικαστής (√δικάζω), βουλευτής (√βουλεύω).

## II. *Feminines.*

1. *Verbal* derivatives in *a* and *η* are oxytone. (This is especially the case where the stem vowel is changed.) E. g. στολή (√στέλλω), σπονδή (√σπένδω), τομή (√τέμνω), τιμή (√τιμάω).

2. All in *ä* (gen. *ης*) are recessive; e. g. Μοῦσα, τράπεζα.

## § 74. **Second Declension** (Uncompounded).

The following suffixes are the most commonly used, i. e. -ος (-ον), ιος, -κος, -λος, -μος, -νος, -ρος, -τος. It will require a little care to tell in some words whether the suffix is simply -ος or one of the others; e. g. νόμ-ος, ἀγ-ός, δρόμ-ος, τροπ-ός, τροχ-ός are all formed with the suffix -ος, not with -γος, -μος, -πος, etc., as they are sometimes classified, much to the student's bewilderment.

There are also many secondary suffixes formed from the above; e. g. -ικος, -ακος, -ιμος, -αμος, -αλος, etc.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> § 74. The accent of nouns with these suffixes varies. Generally *speaking nouns* with trochaic (— ∪) endings remain oxytone (espe-

The simple suffix *-ος* is very common in nouns is less so in adjectives, which usually have *-κος*, *-λ-μος*, etc., or even some secondary suffix, as *-ικιμος*, etc.<sup>1</sup>

1. *Nomina agentis*. Nouns in *-ος* expressing *agent* are oxytone; e. g. τροχ-ός (√τρέχω), 'a riner,' 'a wheel;' τροπ-ός (√τρέπω), 'a thole strap τροφ-ός (√τρέφω), 'a nurse;' ἀγ-ός (√ἄγω), leader.'

2. *Nomina actionis*. Nouns in *-ος* expressing *action* (or a quality, or a thing done or made) : recessive. The tendency is to accent the stem s lable; e. g. τρόχ-ος (√τρέχω), 'a course;' τρόπ (√τρέπω), 'a turn,' 'manner;' λόγ-ος (√λέγω), speech;' σπόρ-ος (√σπείρω), 'a sowing,' 'seed ὀκν-ος (√ὀκνέω), 'hesitation;' πόν-ος (√πένομα 'labor.'

3. *Verbal derivatives in -μος and -τος* are oxyton e. g. λογισ-μός, κωκυ-τός.

cially polysyllables), others generally recessive; e. g. θεωρός, θάλα (exc. is ποταμός), στέφανος (exc. is οὐρανός).

<sup>1</sup> § 74. It may help the student to know that in the second clension more than twice as many *masculine* nouns with suffix *-ος* barytone than oxytone; the *neuter* nouns are almost all baryton *Adjectives* on the other hand are mostly oxytone. Feminine no with the corresponding suffix (*α, η*) have twice as many oxytone barytones. (Schröder, Redetheile im Griechischen u. Lateinisch p. 123.)

4. *Neuters* are recessive; e. g. τὸ ἔργον, τὸ ὄπλον, τὸ δρέπανον.

Adjectives used as nouns retain their accent; e. g. τὸ κακόν, τὸ καλόν; and verbals, as τὸ φυτόν.

5. *Diminutives*<sup>1</sup> accent the first syllable of the suffix; e. g. τειχ-ύδριον, εἰδ-ύλλιον. From οἶκος come οἰκ-ίσκος, οἰκ-ίον, οἰκ-ίδιον.

#### § 75. Compound Nouns of the Second Declension.

1. If the second part is an *active verbal* it receives the accent. Trochaic endings (i. e. — ú) are oxytone, others (ú ú, — ú ú) are paroxytone; e. g. λοχ-ᾱγός (√ᾱγω), 'a captain;' στρατ-ηγός, 'a general;' σκυτο-τόμος (√τέμνω), 'a cobbler;' δισκο-βόλος (√βάλλω), 'a quoit thrower.'

2. If the second part is derived from a noun, the accent is recessive; e. g. φιλό-λογος, 'a philologist;' ἵππο-πόταμος, 'a river-horse;' θέ-οινος, 'wine-god;' οἰνό-πεδον, 'vineyard.' Also *all* those compounded with a preposition (*even verbals*); e. g. σύν-δουλος, 'fellow-slave;' μέθ-οδος, 'method;' ὁ διάβολος, 'the slanderer.'

<sup>1</sup> § 74. 5. The term "diminutive" is extended to embrace the idea 'made of,' etc., as well as a small —; e. g. χρυσίον, 'gold coin' or 'gold plate;' also πεδίον (√πέδον), 'a plain.'

NOTES. 1. Diminutives in -ίσκος are *all* paroxytone, notwithstanding their trochaic ending.

2. Those in -ίον have some recessive exceptions.

3. If the diminutive suffix has more than three syllables the accent is *of course* proparoxytone; e. g. παιδ-ισκάριον.

The simple suffix *-ος* is very common in nouns, it is less so in adjectives, which usually have *-κος*, *-λος*, *-μος*, etc., or even some secondary suffix, as *-ικος*, *ιμος*, etc.<sup>1</sup>

1. *Nomina agentis*. Nouns in *-ος* expressing the *agent* are oxytone; e. g. τροχ-ός (√τρέχω), 'a runner,' 'a wheel;' τροπ-ός (√τρέπω), 'a thole strap;' τροφ-ός (√τρέφω), 'a nurse;' ἀγ-ός (√ἄγω), 'a leader.'

2. *Nomina actionis*. Nouns in *-ος* expressing an *action* (or a quality, or a thing done or made) are recessive. The tendency is to accent the stem syllable; e. g. τράχ-ος (√τρέχω), 'a course;' τρόπ-ος (√τρέπω), 'a turn,' 'manner;' λόγ-ος (√λέγω), 'a speech;' σπόρ-ος (√σπείρω), 'a sowing,' 'seed;' ὀκν-ος (√ὀκνέω), 'hesitation;' πόν-ος (√πένομαι), 'labor.'

3. *Verbal derivatives in -μος and -τος* are oxytone; e. g. λογισ-μός, κωκυ-τός.

cially polysyllables), others generally recessive; e. g. θεωρός, θάλαμος (exc. is ποταμός), στέφανος (exc. is οὐρανός).

<sup>1</sup> § 74. It may help the student to know that in the second declension more than twice as many *masculine* nouns with suffix *-ος* are barytone than oxytone; the *neuter* nouns are almost all barytone. *Adjectives* on the other hand are mostly oxytone. Feminine nouns with the corresponding suffix (*α, η*) have twice as many oxytones as barytones. (Schröder, Redetheile im Griechischen u. Lateinischen, p. 123.)

4. *Neuters* are recessive; e. g. τὸ ἔργον, τὸ ὄπλον, τὸ δρέπανον.

Adjectives used as nouns retain their accent; e. g. τὸ κακόν, τὸ καλόν; and verbals, as τὸ φυτόν.

5. *Diminutives*<sup>1</sup> accent the first syllable of the suffix; e. g. τειχ-ύδριον, εἰδ-ύλλιον. From οἶκος come οἰκ-ίσκος, οἰκ-ίον, οἰκ-ίδιον.

### § 75. Compound Nouns of the Second Declension.

1. If the second part is an *active verbal* it receives the accent. Trochaic endings (i. e. — ὶ) are oxytone, others (ῶ ὶ, — ὶ ὶ) are paroxytone; e. g. λοχ-ᾱγός (ῥᾱγῶ), 'a captain;' στρατ-ηγός, 'a general;' σκυτο-τόμος (ῥτέμνω), 'a cobbler;' δισκο-βόλος (ῥβάλλω), 'a quoit thrower.'

2. If the second part is derived from a noun, the accent is recessive; e. g. φιλό-λογος, 'a philologist;' ἵππο-πόταμος, 'a river-horse;' θέ-οινος, 'wine-god;' οἰνό-πεδον, 'vineyard.' Also *all* those compounded with a preposition (*even verbals*); e. g. σύν-δουλος, 'fellow-slave;' μέθ-οδος, 'method;' ὁ διάβολος, 'the slanderer.'

<sup>1</sup> § 74. 5. The term "diminutive" is extended to embrace the idea 'made of,' etc., as well as a small —; e. g. χρυσίον, 'gold coin' or 'gold plate;' also πεδίον (ῥπέδον), 'a plain.'

NOTES. 1. Diminutives in -ίσκος are *all* paroxytone, notwithstanding their trochaic ending.

2. Those in -ίον have some recessive exceptions.

3. If the diminutive suffix has more than three syllables the accent is of course *proparoxytone*; e. g. παιδ-ισκάριον.



§ 76. **Third Declension.**<sup>1</sup>

I. The following classes of nouns are oxytone :

- (a) *All in -αν or -ην (-ηνος or -ενος) ;* e. g. *παιάν, ποιμήν.*
- (b) *All in -εως ;* e. g. *βασιλεύς, ἱππεύς.*
- (c) *Feminines in -ας (-άδος) ;* e. g. *ἡ Ἑλλάς.*
- (d) *Masculines in -ηρ ;* e. g. *ὁ πατήρ, ὁ ἀήρ, ὁ ἀστὴρ* (but feminine, *ἡ μήτηρ*, etc.).
- (e) *All collectives, words of locality, place, and time, and names of months, with the suffix -ων (-ῶνος) ;* e. g. *ἀμπελών, 'vineyard ;' μυλῶν, 'mill ;' αἰών, 'age ;' χειμῶν, 'winter ;' Ἑκατομβαιῶν, 'Hecatombaeon.'*
- (f) *Feminines and national names in -ων (-όνος) ;* e. g. *ἡ εἰκὼν, 'image ;' Μακεδών, 'a Macedonian.'*

II. Other masculine and feminine nouns are chiefly recessive ; e. g. *ἡ δύναμις, ὁ ἄναξ, ἡ κλίμαξ.*

<sup>1</sup> § 76. *Monosyllables.* Short monosyllables are necessarily oxytone. Long monosyllables are either oxytone or perispomenon.

(a) Masculine and feminine monosyllables are generally oxytone ; e. g. *μήν, χήν, χθών, θήρ, χεῖρ, πούς, αἶξ, βίς, Ζεύς*, etc. The most common exceptions are *ναῦς, βοῦς, γραῦς, μῦς, ὄς (σὺς), δρῦς, γλαῦξ* (also *γλαύξ*), and many proper names.

Contract words are perispomenon ; e. g. *ῆρ, οῖς, παῖς.*

(b) Neuter monosyllables are perispomenon. As this is a form of recessive accent, it agrees with § 76, III, "All neuters are recessive." E. g. *οὖς, πῦρ*, all indeclinable words like names of letters, e. g. *μῦ, νῦ, ξῖ, πῖ.*

§ 76. IV. *Compound nouns of Third Declension.*

(a) Compounds of monosyllables retract the accent ; e. g. *Αἰγί-παν, 'goat-Pan.'* There are but few real nouns ; e. g. *ἀντι-χθων* (sc. *γῆ*), *ἀντι-χειρ* (sc. *δάκτυλος*).

(b) Compounds from polysyllables usually retain the accent of *their last member* (except oxytones in *-ην* and *-αν*, which become *paroxytone*, and some exceptions in *-ηρ*) ; e. g. *Δη-μήτηρ, ὑπογραμματεύς.*

III. *All neuters* are recessive; e. g. τὸ εὖρος, τὸ στράτευμα.

§ 77. **Adjectives.**<sup>1</sup>

**First and Second Declensions (Uncompounded).**

1. Adjectives of the first and second declensions ending in -ος, -κος, -λος, -μος, -νος, -ρος, -τος are chiefly oxytone; e. g. σοφ-ός, χθαμα-λός, θερ-μός, ἰλα-ρός, αἰνε-τός.

<sup>1</sup> § 77. NOTES. (a) Some very common exceptions of adjectives in -ος are the following: φίλος, νέος, μέσος, μόνος, ἴσος, ὀλίγος, ὅλος.

(b) -κος. Exceptions are the paroxytone diminutives in -ισκος.

(c) -λος. There a number of paroxytone and recessive exceptions.

(d) -ρος. There are a few exceptions. But all comparatives (and others in -τερος like ἡμέτερος, ἐκάτερος) are recessive according to rule.

(e) -μος. These vary. Those in -αμος and -ισμος are oxytone; -μους regularly, and other secondaries chiefly, recessive.

(f) -νος. Many in -νος are oxytone. The secondary suffixes -υνος, -ινος, etc., chiefly recessive. N. B. -ινος, meaning 'made of' or 'pertaining to,' is recessive; e. g. ἀμυγδάλινος, 'of almonds; ἐλεφάντινος, 'of ivory;' but -ινος, 'in time of,' is oxytone; e. g. ἑσπερινός, 'at even,' χειμερινός, θερινός, etc.

(g) -τος. Verbals in -τος and -τεος accent the suffix; e. g. διδασ-τός, 'ought to be taught,' δρασ-τός, γραπ-τέον, πρακτέος. Superlatives are recessive according to rule. Numerals in -τος are recessive except those in -οστος, oxytone; e. g. δέκατος, εἰκοστός.

§ 77. 2. παλαι-ός (πάλαι) is an adjective in -ος, and βέβαι-ος is reduplicated. Many of the properispomena come from oxytone nouns; e. g. ἀρχαῖος (Ἀρχή), ἀμοιβαῖος (Ἀμοιβή), κορυφαῖος (Κορυφή); others from recessive nouns; e. g. βίαιος (βία), δίκαιος (δική), and seem to be accented accordingly.

§ 77. 4. For contract adjectives see G. § 65; H. § 223.

N. B. Many, but not all, derivative suffixes like *-ικος*, *-αλος*, *-ηλος*, *-αμος*, *-ιμος*, *-ινος*, *-ανος*, etc., are included in the above rule. Some of these are *regularly* oxytone, e. g. all in *-ικος*; some are regularly recessive, e. g. those in *-ιμος*. All comparatives (*-τερος*) and all superlatives (*-τατος*) are recessive.

2. Adjectives in *-ιος* are recessive; some are proparoxytone and some properispomenon (*-αῖος* = *-ά* + *-ιος*, *-ειος*, *-οιος*, *-υιος* are to be here included); e. g. *ἄγριος*, *ἄλιος*, *ἀρχαῖος* (*ὑἀρχή*), *δίκαιος* (*ὑδίκη*), *μάταιος* (*ὑμάτην*).

3. *All comparatives and superlatives* (of first, second, and third declensions) are recessive; e. g. *σοφώτερος*, *ἀλθέστατος*, *ἡδίων*, *ἡδιον*, *ἡδιστος*.

#### § 78.<sup>1</sup> Compound Adjectives of First and Second Declensions.

1. If the second part is an *active verbal*, it receives the accent. Trochaic endings (—υ) are oxytone, others paroxytone; *ὑμνο-ποιός*, 'making hymns;'

<sup>1</sup> § 78. NOTES. These compounds are numerous and important; and their composition, meaning, and accent should be carefully observed.

2. Compound substantival derivatives in *-ινος*, meaning 'in time of,' remain oxytone; e. g. *μετοπωρινός*, 'autumnal.' Those in *-ικος* remain oxytone; e. g. *περικεκτικός*.

§ 78. 4. Multiplicatives in *-πλος* are paroxytone; e. g. *διπλός*, 'double.'

§ 78. 5. Compounds in *-αιος* are either proparoxytone or properispomenon. The grammarians say that they should be properispomenon.

ἀρματο-πηγός, 'making chariots;' μισθο-φόρος, 'receiving pay;' ἵππο-τρόφος, 'keeping horses;' λαιμο-τόμος, 'throat-cutting' (for λαιμότομος see 2); παιδο-κτόνος, 'child-slaying' (N. B. παιδό-κτονος would mean 'slain by a child;' see 2).

Verbals compounded with prepositions, ᾰ privative, etc., are exceptions; see 2.

2. *Substantive* derivatives, *passive* verbals, and those compounded with prepositions, with ᾰ privative (also εὖ, δυσ-, ἀεί, ἄρι-, ἐρι-, πάλιν, ἡμι-), are recessive; e. g. (from substantives) ὀκτά-μηνος, 'eight months old;' βαρύ-τονος, 'deep toned;' μισό-λογος, 'hating argument;' (passives) νεό-φονος, 'lately slain;' λαιμό-τομος, 'with the throat cut;' (prepositions, etc.) διά-φορος, 'different;' περί-δρομος, 'running around;' ἄγραφος, 'unwritten;' εὐ-άγωγος, 'easy to lead.'

3. *Reduplicated* adjectives are recessive. This is a form of compound words. E. g. βάρ-βαρ-ος, βέ-βαιος, βέβηλος, δίδυμος, δαίδαλος, ἐτήτυμος, κάρχαρος, λάληθρος, μέρμερος, μαρμάρεος.

### § 79. Adjectives of the Third Declension.

1. Those in -υς and -ης are oxytone;<sup>1</sup> e. g. ὀξύς, 'sharp;' βαρύς, 'heavy,' 'deep;' ψευδής, 'false;' πρηνής, 'prone.'

<sup>1</sup> There are only a few important exceptions, i. e. πλήρης, θήλυς, ἡμισυς, and several in -ις (-ιος).

2. Others with *stems ending in a consonant* are recessive; <sup>1</sup> e. g. μέλας (μελαν-), 'black; ' πένης (πενητ-), 'poor; ' χαρίεις (χαριεντ-), 'graceful.'

☞ For compound adjectives of third declension the student is referred to Chandler, "Greek Accentuation," pp. 197 ff.

<sup>1</sup> The exceptions are: γυμνής, ψιλής, άργής, έκών, those in -ας (-αδος), and those in -ις (-ιδος), which have a corresponding masculine form. The comparatives of this declension are included in the rule. Like all comparatives they are recessive; e. g. βελτίων. N. B. They are recessive through the paradigm, e. g. βέλτιον.

## EXERCISES.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

## SPECIAL VOCABULARIES.

Learn in connection with following exercises.

### (1.) Parts of the Body.

The head . . . . .	ἡ κεφαλή.
hair . . . . .	ἡ θρίξ, τριχός.
hair of head . . . . .	ἡ κόμη.
face . . . . .	τὸ πρόσωπον.
temples . . . . .	οἱ κρόταφοι.
ear . . . . .	τὸ οὖς, ὠτός.
eye . . . . .	ὁ ὀφθαλμός.
brow, the eye-brow . . . .	ἡ ὀφρὺς, ὕος.
nose . . . . .	ἡ ῥίς, ῥινός.
mouth . . . . .	τὸ στόμα, ατος.
lip, (also means brink, edge)	τὸ χεῖλος.
tongue (also language) . .	ἡ γλῶσσα.
tooth . . . . .	ὁ ὀδούς, ὀδόντος.
jaw . . . . .	ἡ γνάθος.
beard . . . . .	ὁ πώγων, ὠνος.
neck (vertebrated), throat ; (also isthmus or strait) .	ὁ αἰχμήν, ἐνος.
throat and neck . . . . .	ὁ τράχηλος, pl. τὰ τράχηλα.
breast, chest . . . . .	τὸ στήθος.
shoulder . . . . .	ὁ ὤμος.
arm, upper arm . . . . .	ὁ βραχίον.
forearm, arm, (cubit) . .	ὁ πήχυς, εως.
elbow, forearm . . . . .	ἡ ὠλένη.



The hand . . . . .	ἡ χεῖρ, χειρός.
finger . . . . .	ὁ δάκτυλος.
belly . . . . .	ἡ γαστήρ.
back . . . . .	τὸ νῶτον.
leg . . . . .	τὸ σκέλος.
thigh . . . . .	ὁ μηρός.
knee . . . . .	τὸ γόνυ, γόνατος.
foot . . . . .	ὁ πούς, ποδός.
toe . . . . .	ὁ δάκτυλος (τοῦ ποδός).
nail, (hoof, claw) . . .	ὁ ὄνυξ, ὄνυχος.
body . . . . .	τὸ σῶμα.
limbs, members . . .	τὰ μέλη.
heart . . . . .	ἡ καρδιά.
entrails . . . . .	τὰ ἔντερα.
bone . . . . .	τὸ ὀστούν.
flesh . . . . .	ἡ σὰρξ, κός.
blood . . . . .	τὸ αἷμα.
vein . . . . .	ὁ ὄρ ἡ φλέψ, βός.

## (2.) Man, Family, etc.

man (woman), <i>homo</i> . . . .	ὁ ἄνθρωπος.
The man, husband, <i>vir</i> . . . .	ὁ ἀνὴρ, ἀνδρός.
woman, wife . . . . .	ἡ γυνή, γυναικός.
father . . . . .	ὁ πατήρ, πατρός.
mother . . . . .	ἡ μήτηρ, μητρός.
papa . . . . .	ὁ πάππας, ου.
mamma . . . . .	ἡ μάμμη or μάμμα.
The grandfather . . . . .	ὁ πάππος.
grandmother . . . . .	ἡ τήθη.
uncle . . . . .	ὁ θεῖος (also πάτρω, μ τρως, ως and ω).
aunt . . . . .	ἡ τηθίς, ἰδος.
child, baby . . . . .	τὸ τέκνον, τὸ παιδίον.

1e infant . . . . .	ὁ νήπιος.
child, boy, girl . . . . .	ὁ οἱ ἡ παῖς, παιδός.
son . . . . .	ὁ υἱός.
daughter . . . . .	ἡ θυγάτηρ, ρός.
brother . . . . .	ὁ ἀδελφός.
sister . . . . .	ἡ ἀδελφή.
grandson . . . . .	ὁ υἱοῦς οἱ παῖς παιδός.
cousin, (also nephew, niece)	ὁ ἀνεψιός, ἡ ἀνεψιά.
parents . . . . .	οἱ γονεῖς.
relations . . . . .	οἱ συγγενεῖς.
old-man . . . . .	ὁ γέρον, οντος.
old-woman . . . . .	ἡ γραῦς, γραός.
old-age . . . . .	τὸ γῆρας, γήρως.
young man . . . . .	ὁ νεανίσκος, νεανίας.
young-woman, girl . . . . .	ἡ παρθένος, ἡ κόρη.
(time of) youth . . . . .	ἡ νεότης, τητος.
ancestors . . . . .	οἱ πρόγονοι.
descendants . . . . .	οἱ ἀπόγονοι.
race, descent . . . . .	τὸ γένος.

## (3.) House.

1e house . . . . .	ἡ οἰκία, ὁ οἶκος.
roof, (also room) . . . . .	ἡ στέγη, τὸ τέγος.
roof or ceiling (tiling, etc.)	ἡ ὀροφή.
wall . . . . .	ὁ τοῖχος.
housebreaker, burglar . . . .	ὁ τοιχωρύχος.
door . . . . .	ἡ θύρα.
window . . . . .	ἡ θυρίς, ἴδος.
porter, doorkeeper . . . . .	ὁ θυρωρός.
peristyle, court . . . . .	ἡ αὐλή.
chamber, room . . . . .	ὁ θάλαμος, τὸ τέγος, τὸ οἶκημα.
upper-room, upper-story . . .	τὸ ὑπερῶον.

The men's apartments . . .	ἡ ἀνδρωνίτις, ἰδος.
women's apartments . . .	ἡ γυναικωνίτις, ἰδος.
hearth, fireside (home) . .	ἡ ἐστία.
brick . . . . .	ἡ πλίνθος.
guest, stranger, (hired-soldier)	ὁ ξένος.
guest-room . . . . .	ὁ ξενών, ὦνος.
ladder, (stairs) . . . . .	ἡ κλίμαξ, ακος.
furniture . . . . .	τὰ σκεύη.
table . . . . .	ἡ τράπεζα.
couch (dining or sleeping)	ἡ κλίνη.
bed (poet.) . . . . .	ἡ εἰνή.
chair, seat . . . . .	ἡ ἔδρα, ὁ θρόνος.
master . . . . .	ὁ δεσπότης.
servant, attendant . . . .	ὁ ὑπηρέτης, ὁ θεράπων
	παῖνα, ὁ οἰκέτης, ἡ
slave . . . . .	ὁ δοῦλος, ὁ οἰκέτης,
	δράποδον.
lamp . . . . .	ὁ λύχνος.
torch, lamp . . . . .	ἡ λαμπάς, ἄδος.
street, (road) . . . . .	ἡ ὁδός.

## (4.) The Heavens.

The universe, (order) . . .	ὁ κόσμος.
heaven, sky . . . . .	ὁ οὐρανός.
Olympus, (sky) . . . . .	ὁ Ὀλυμπος.
star . . . . .	ὁ ἀστήρ.
stars . . . . .	τὰ ἄστρο.
sun . . . . .	ὁ ἥλιος.
moon . . . . .	ἡ σελήνη.
eclipse . . . . .	ἡ ἐκλειψις.
dawn, sunrise . . . . .	ὁ ὄρθρος.
sunset . . . . .	δυσμαὶ ἡλίου.
air (lower) . . . . .	ὁ ἀήρ.

The air (upper)	ὁ αἰθήρ.
wind	ὁ ἄνεμος.
wind, air, (spirit)	τὸ πνεῦμα.
thunder	ἡ βροντή.
lightning	ἡ ἀστραπή.
thunderbolt	ὁ κεραυνός.
cloud	τὸ νέφος (ἡ νεφέλη).
rain (storm)	ὁ ὄμβρος.
rain, (shower)	ὁ ὑετός.
snow (usually <i>fallen</i> )	ἡ χιών.
snow (usually <i>falling</i> )	ἡ νιφάς, ἄδος (Ion. and poet).
hail	ἡ χάλαξα.

## (5.) Time.

time	ὁ χρόνος.
The year	τὸ ἔτος, ὁ ἐνιαυτός.
month	ὁ μῆν.
day	ἡ ἡμέρα.
night	ἡ νύξ, νυκτός.
hour, season, (spring)	ἡ ὥρα.
dawn, morn, (Aurora, east)	ἡ ἔως (ἡώς H.).
evening, (west)	ἡ ἑσπέρα.
evening, afternoon	ἡ δειλη.
spring	τὸ ἔαρ (or ἦρ), ἡ ὥρα.
summer	τὸ θέρος.
late summer; autumn	ἡ ὁπώρα.
autumn, late autumn	τὸ φθινόπωρον.
winter, (storm)	ὁ χειμών, ὦνος.

## (6.) The Army.

The army	ἡ στρατιά, ὁ στρατός, τὸ στράτευμα.
----------	--

470930

The camp . . . . .	τὸ στρατόπεδον.
tent . . . . .	ἡ σκηνή.
expedition, campaign . .	ἡ στρατεία.
force (power in general) .	ἡ δύναμις.
company . . . . .	ὁ λόχος.
line of battle (4-25 deep)	ἡ φάλαγξ.
rank ; file ; company ; post	ἡ τάξις.
wing . . . . .	τὸ κέρασ.
right . . . . .	τὸ δεξιόν.
left . . . . .	τὸ εὐώνυμον.
scout, watcher . . . . .	ὁ σκοπός.
commander . . . . .	ὁ ἄρχων, οντος.
leader, guide . . . . .	ὁ ἡγεμών.
general . . . . .	ὁ στρατηγός.
captain . . . . .	ὁ λοχαγός.
soldier . . . . .	ὁ στρατιώτης.
heavy-armed soldier, hop-	
lite . . . . .	ὁ ὀπλίτης.
light-armed soldier . . .	ὁ γυμνής, ἦτος.
targeteer (light-armed) .	ὁ πελταστής.
slinger . . . . .	ὁ σφενδονήτης.
bowman, archer . . . .	ὁ τοξότης.
armor, arms . . . . .	τὰ ὄπλα.
bow . . . . .	τὸ τόξον.
sling . . . . .	ἡ σφενδόνη.
sword . . . . .	τὸ ξίφος.
short-sword, sabre, or knife	ἡ μάχαιρα.
spear . . . . .	τὸ δόρυ, ρατος.
quiver . . . . .	ἡ φαρέτρα.
helmet . . . . .	τὸ κράνος (ἡ κόρυς H.).
soldier's cap ; helmet . .	ἡ κυνή.
breastplate ; cuirass . .	ἡ θώραξ.
shield . . . . .	ἡ ἀσπίς, ἴδος.
greave . . . . .	ἡ κνημίς, ἴδος.

The trumpet . . . . .	ἡ σάλπιγξ.
baggage . . . . .	τὰ σκεύη.
necessaries, provisions . . .	τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.
food, provisions . . . . .	τὰ σίτα.
beasts of burden . . . . .	τὰ ὑποζύγια.
infantry . . . . .	οἱ πεζοί.
cavalry . . . . .	ἡ ἵππος, οἱ ἵππεῖς.
cavalryman . . . . .	ὁ ἵππεύς.
cavalry general . . . . .	ὁ ἵππαρχος.
guard, sentinel . . . . .	ὁ φύλαξ.
fight, battle . . . . .	ἡ μάχη.
victory . . . . .	ἡ νίκη.
flight . . . . .	ἡ φυγή.

## (7.) Animals.

NOTE. — A few of the following words will not occur in the exercises, but are added for use in oral exercises.

The animal ; living thing . . .	τὸ ζῷον.
beast . . . . .	ὁ θήρ, θηρὸς, τὸ θηρίον.
horse, mare . . . . .	ὁ ἵππος, ἡ ἵππος.
colt . . . . .	ὁ (ἡ) πῶλος.
ass . . . . .	ὁ (ἡ) ὄνος.
mule . . . . .	ἡ (ὁ) ἡμίονος.
camel . . . . .	ὁ (ἡ) κάμηλος.
elephant . . . . .	ὁ ἐλέφας, αὐτός.
ox, cow . . . . .	ὁ (ἡ) βούς, βοός.
bull . . . . .	ὁ ταῦρος.
sheep . . . . .	ὁ (ἡ) οἶς, οἷός.
sheep, flocks . . . . .	τὰ πρόβατα.
ram . . . . .	ὁ κριοῦς.
goat . . . . .	ὁ (ἡ) αἰξ, αἰγός (H. and poet.).
<i>billy-goat</i> . . . . .	ὁ τράγος.

The she-goat . . . . .	ἡ χίμαιρα.
boar, swine, hog, sow, pig .	ὁ (ἡ) ὕς, ὕος, σὺς, σνός
boar . . . . .	ὁ κάπρος.
pig . . . . .	ὁ (ἡ) χοῖρος.
dog . . . . .	ὁ (ἡ) κύων, κυνός.
cat . . . . .	ὁ (ἡ) αἴλουρος.
mouse . . . . .	ὁ μῦς, μνός.
deer, stag . . . . .	ὁ, ἡ ἔλαφος.
hare . . . . .	ὁ λαγῶς.
fox . . . . .	ἡ ἀλώπηξ.
wolf . . . . .	ὁ λύκος.
lion . . . . .	ὁ λέων.
lioness . . . . .	ἡ λέαινα.
tiger . . . . .	(ὁ) ἡ τίγρις (acc. τίγρι)
bear . . . . .	ἡ ἄρκτος.
crocodile . . . . .	ὁ κροκόδειλος.
rhinoceros . . . . .	ὁ ῥινόκερως, ωτος.
fish . . . . .	ὁ ἰχθύς.
snake . . . . .	ὁ ὄφεις.
spider . . . . .	ἡ ἀράχνη.

## (8.) Birds.

The bird (of <i>prey</i> or <i>omen</i> ) . .	ὁ οἰωνός.
bird ; chicken, cock, hen .	ὁ (ἡ) ὄρνις, ὄρνιθος.
cock . . . . .	ὁ ἀλεκτρυών.
wing, feather . . . . .	τὸ πτερόν.
beak (snout) . . . . .	τὸ ῥίγχος.
egg . . . . .	τὸ ὠόν.
nest . . . . .	ἡ νεοσσιὰ.
goose . . . . .	ὁ χήν.
duck . . . . .	ἡ νήττα.
peacock . . . . .	ὁ ταῶς.
pigeon, dove . . . . .	ἡ περιστερά.

the nightingale . . . . .	ἡ ἀηδών.
swallow . . . . .	ἡ χελιδών.
swan . . . . .	ὁ κύκνος.
crane . . . . .	ἡ γέρανος.
crow, raven . . . . .	ὁ κόραξ.
vulture . . . . .	ὁ γύψ, γυπός.
eagle . . . . .	ὁ ἀετός.

## (9.) Interrogative Words.

hither? . . . . .	ποῦ;
Who? What? . . . . .	τίς; τί;
When? . . . . .	πότε;
Where? . . . . .	ποῦ;
Hence? . . . . .	πόθεν;
How many? How much? . . .	πόσος; ἡ; ον;
Or how much? . . . . .	πόσων;
What sort of? . . . . .	ποῖος; α; ον;
How? . . . . .	πῶς;





## EXERCISES. PART I.

---

### I. ON THE BODY.

The teacher should supplement these exercises by oral practice. Cf. for example the sentences given after No. III. Words or letters enclosed within parentheses are to be omitted in translating into Greek.

*Socrates.* Hello-you !<sup>1</sup> How many hands have you ?<sup>2</sup>

*Xenophon.* I have two hands.

*S.* And how many fingers on each hand ?

*X.* Five.

*S.* How many on both hands ?

*X.* I<sup>3</sup> have ten, but<sup>4</sup> my brother has nine only ; for he lost the thumb of his right hand, awkward fellow that he was,<sup>4</sup> cutting<sup>5</sup> it off with a knife.

*S.* Where is your nose ?

*X.* My<sup>6</sup> nose is in the middle-of<sup>7</sup> my face and between my two eyes.

*S.* How many feet have you ?

*X.* I<sup>8</sup> have only two, but<sup>8</sup> my horse has four.

*S.* What sort of toes has your horse ?

*X.* No toe(s) at all so-far-as<sup>9</sup> I can see, but each foot has one large hoof. But the biologists tell many other<sup>9</sup> strange things, and they actually<sup>10</sup> say that<sup>11</sup> horses have toes,<sup>12</sup> saying things incredible.

<sup>1</sup> tr. : οἶστος, § 9.

<sup>5</sup> aor., § 31.

<sup>9</sup> tr. : many and other.

<sup>2</sup> dat. poss., § 65, I. (3 c).

<sup>6</sup> § 65, I. (3 b).

<sup>10</sup> καὶ δὴ καί, § 2.

<sup>3</sup> μὲν . . . δέ, § 2.

<sup>7</sup> § 4 (d).

<sup>11</sup> acc. and inf., § 54.

<sup>4</sup> tr. : being a certain

<sup>8</sup> ὅσων γε.

<sup>12</sup> add τὸς.

awkward one.

II. THE BODY. (*Continued.*)

The majority of<sup>1</sup> mankind have limbs and members as follows :<sup>2</sup> First,<sup>3</sup> they have the head — on this the young have hair, while the old, poor wretches that they are,<sup>4</sup> have the top-of<sup>5</sup> the head bald nor do they have a single<sup>6</sup> hair, but a long beard only. Secondly,<sup>8</sup> they have ears on each<sup>7</sup> side of the head ; then again, two eyes and a nose and the mouth, in which are the teeth and the tongue. Now<sup>8</sup> the other<sup>9</sup> members are numerous and varied, but<sup>9</sup> from the heart flows the blood by the veins and arteries through the upper arm and the fore-arm into the ends of<sup>5</sup> the fingers, and in like manner also into the toes. When the flesh and the entrails are wanting and the bones alone remain, the man turns into a skeleton.

<sup>1</sup> tr.: οἱ πολλοί.

<sup>2</sup> use τοῖσδε, § 9.

<sup>3</sup> tr.: τοῦτο μὲν . . . followed  
by τοῦτο δέ.

<sup>4</sup> tr.: being poor wretches.

<sup>5</sup> § 4 (*d*).

<sup>6</sup> use negative. In Greek, two negatives do not make an affirmative.

<sup>7</sup> ἐνθεν καὶ ἐνθεν.

<sup>8</sup> † μὲν οὖν, § 2.

<sup>9</sup> μὲν . . . δέ, § 2.

## III. POLYPHEMUS.

The Cyclops Polyphemus was a large giant.<sup>1</sup> His body was so large and his legs so long that when<sup>2</sup> he was walking even in the midst of the sea, the water wetted his<sup>3</sup> knees and sometimes his<sup>3</sup> thighs, but never wet his<sup>3</sup> belly. When<sup>4</sup> Odysseus and his companions were shut up in his cave, Polyphemus ate up with his strong jaws and teeth two of the com-

panions at luncheon and at dinner, but when <sup>6</sup> he had dined he lay out flat-on-his-back in the cave, resting his stout neck upon the ground. Then <sup>6</sup> Odysseus, taking-his-stand <sup>7</sup> upon the Cyclops' great chest, put out with a hot bar his <sup>8</sup> one solitary wheel-shaped eye, which was in the middle-of <sup>8</sup> his forehead.

<sup>1</sup> nom. case, § 62.

<sup>5</sup> aor. ptc., § 15 (1).

<sup>2</sup> tr.: 'for him walking.' Cf. § 65  
(I. 3) and 15 (1).

<sup>6</sup> τότε δή.

<sup>7</sup> use ἵστημι.

<sup>3</sup> article, § 3 (c).

<sup>8</sup> § 4 (d).

<sup>4</sup> genitive abs. or conj. and finite verb, § 16.

#### Suggestion for Oral Exercise.

Who was Polyphemus?

He was a Cyclops.

How many eyes had he?

He had one solitary eye.

Where was his eye?

His eye was in the middle  
of his forehead.

Of what sort was his eye?

His eye was shaped like a  
wheel.

τίς ἦν Πολύφημος ;

Κύκλωψ τις ἦν.

πόσοι ὀφθαλμοὶ ἦσαν αὐτῷ ; ἦν αὐτῷ εἰς μόνος ὀφθαλμός.

ποῦ ἦν οὗτος ὁ ὀφθαλμός ; ὁ ὀφθαλμός ἦν αὐτῷ ἐν μέσῳ  
τῷ μετώπῳ.

ποῖος ἦν οὗτος ὁ ὀφθαλμός ; ἦν τροχοειδής, etc.

In oral exercises of this character require the student to repeat in his answer all the words of the question as far as possible. It will give quickness both to tongue and to ear.

## IV. THERSITES.

Homer says that<sup>1</sup> Thersites was the ugliest man in the Greek army. (This is not hard to believe)<sup>2</sup> for<sup>2</sup> he was lame in<sup>3</sup> one of his two feet, his two shoulders were humped, his head was sugar-loafed, and the hair grew thin on top. Now Odysseus hated him ; therefore, when<sup>4</sup> Thersites reviled Agamemnon, Odysseus beat his<sup>5</sup> back and shoulders with his golden sceptre so that Thersites stopped in fear,<sup>6</sup> nor did words any longer fall from his lips, but tears — and that too<sup>7</sup> not a few<sup>8</sup> — fell from his eyes.

<sup>1</sup> § 54 and cf. § 11 (3).

<sup>2</sup> ellipsis, § 2 (end).

<sup>3</sup> acc. of respect, § 63 (IV.).

<sup>4</sup> trans. : 'to T. reviling,' § 15  
(1) and § 65 (I. 3).

<sup>5</sup> article, § 3 (c).

<sup>6</sup> nom. ptc., § 14 (δ).

<sup>7</sup> tr. : καὶ ταῦτα.

<sup>8</sup> tr. : many.

## V. PRIAM. (On the Family.)

The name of the last king of Troy was Priam.\* (He was called so) for<sup>1</sup> his sister Hesione bought him, paying a ransom to Heracles by whom<sup>2</sup> he had been captured. His father's name was Laomedon, his mother's Strymo, and his wife's name Hecuba. To Priam the king there were born fifty sons and fifty daughters. Now his<sup>3</sup> eldest son Hector and his wife Andromache gave<sup>4</sup> the old man no trouble,<sup>5</sup> but his second son, Paris, or Alexander, troubled<sup>4</sup> him much, both in other respects<sup>6</sup> and especially<sup>6</sup> in bringing<sup>7</sup> Helen to Ilium, having stolen her away from her husband, Menelaus. Therefore the Greeks made an expedition from the Peloponnesus against Troy, commanded by Agamemnon,<sup>2</sup> the brother of Menelaus.

<sup>1</sup> ellipsis γάρ, § 2 (end).<sup>5</sup> acc. of respect, τὰ ἄλλα.<sup>2</sup> agent, § 65 (I. 3, d').<sup>6</sup> καὶ δὴ καί, § 2.<sup>3</sup> article, § 3 (c).<sup>7</sup> nom. of ptc., § 14 (δ).<sup>4</sup> tr.: give . . . trouble, πράγματα παρέχεν.

\* For different derivation and version of story, see Lid. &amp; Scott.

## VI. PARIS.

When <sup>1</sup> the Greeks, after ten years, had <sup>2</sup> taken and <sup>3</sup> burned <sup>4</sup> Ilium, Agamemnon returned to Greece, taking with him Cassandra, one-of-the-daughters <sup>5</sup> of Priam. Virgil, the Roman poet, says that Priam was <sup>6</sup> killed by Pyrrhus, <sup>7</sup> the son of Achilles. Paris, wounded by Philoctetes and deprived of Helen, went-in-search-of <sup>8</sup> his first wife, Oenone ; but she, angered <sup>9</sup> at what-had-happened, <sup>10</sup> declared she would n't <sup>11</sup> nurse his wound. So Paris, being-neglected, <sup>12</sup> died and Oenone forthwith repenting, <sup>13</sup> hanged herself and died also.<sup>14</sup>

<sup>1</sup> tr. by finite verb, § 51.

<sup>2</sup> § 1 (caution).

<sup>3</sup> tr.: 'a daughter of.'

<sup>4</sup> § 54.

<sup>5</sup> § 65 (I. 3, d').

<sup>6</sup> use *μετέρχομαι*.

<sup>7</sup> use *χαλεπῶς φέρων*.

<sup>8</sup> tr.: τὰ γεγονημένα.

<sup>9</sup> tr.: 'declare . . . not' = οὐ φημι  
with future inf., § 54.

<sup>10</sup> perfect, § 31 (b).

<sup>11</sup> aor. ptc., § 31 (a).

<sup>12</sup> tr.: καὶ αὐτῇ, § 9 (b).

## VII. PRIAM'S GRANDCHILDREN.

Polites, a son of Priam, was killed by Pyrrhus before-the-eyes <sup>1</sup> of the old-man his <sup>2</sup> father. Afterwards his son Priam, named-after his <sup>3</sup> grandfather, came to Italy with his <sup>4</sup> cousin Ascanius, who <sup>5</sup> was himself also a grandson of King Priam and the child of Cretisa and Aenēas. Hector, the boys' uncle, had already died <sup>6</sup> under-the-walls-of <sup>7</sup> Troy, and their aunt Andromache had been carried off as a slave <sup>8</sup> by Pyrrhus.

<sup>1</sup> tr.: ἐν and dative.

<sup>2</sup> § 3 (c).

<sup>3</sup> dat. of ptc., § 6.

<sup>4</sup> ἡδὴ ἀπέθανε, § 26.

<sup>5</sup> tr.: 'under Troy.'

<sup>6</sup> § 62.

## VIII. THE GREEK HOUSE.

The Greeks made their houses as-follows.<sup>1</sup> When <sup>2</sup> you knocked, the porter opened the door; and then entering through the door, you must needs <sup>3</sup> be-ware-of the dog <sup>4</sup> and pass through the front-hall into the peristyle of the men's-apartments. This peristyle was, as-a-rule, open-to-the-sky <sup>5</sup> in the middle, and rectangular with four porticoes. Somewhere here you would find <sup>6</sup> the master of the house walking about, and you would see many and all-sorts-of rooms arranged round-<sup>7</sup> about; in these one could <sup>8</sup> see tables and dining couches, chairs, beds, and other furniture such as was needed. Here also were the guest-chambers, unless the house happened to have <sup>9</sup> an upper-story.

<sup>1</sup> use τοῖσδε, agreeing with houses, § 9 (a).

<sup>2</sup> tr.: 'to you knocking,' § 15(1).

<sup>3</sup> δεῖ w. acc. and inf.

<sup>4</sup> εἰλαβεῖσθαι and acc.

<sup>5</sup> ὑπαέριος.

<sup>6</sup> § 33 (a).

<sup>7</sup> use περίκειμαι κύκλῳ.

<sup>8</sup> tr.: 'it is possible to see.' Use εἶναι in 'historical present.'

<sup>9</sup> ptc., § 17.



IX. THE HOUSE. (*Continued.*)

In large houses there was another peristyle in the rear and other rooms, all this comprising<sup>1</sup> the women's-apartments, unless these were in an upper-story. Now wherever<sup>2</sup> there was an upper-story it was necessary to go up and down-on<sup>3</sup> a ladder. The walls were sometimes made-of-brick,<sup>4</sup> and housebreakers wishing to steal would-dig-through<sup>5</sup> the walls. Some<sup>6</sup> houses<sup>7</sup> had windows in the walls, others<sup>8</sup> had none; usually the light entered through the opened roof of the peristyles. By night they used lamps<sup>9</sup> within the house, but when<sup>9</sup> the master walked through the dark streets a slave went ahead with<sup>10</sup> a torch; other attendants followed-after him for-the-sake-of security.

<sup>1</sup> tr.: 'being.'<sup>6</sup> τοῖς μέν . . . τοῖς δέ.<sup>2</sup> § 49 (b).<sup>7</sup> dat. poss., § 65.<sup>3</sup> κατέ and gen., or see Anab.<sup>8</sup> dat. Why?

IV. 5. 25.

<sup>4</sup> πλίνθινος.<sup>9</sup> tr.: 'for the master walking'<sup>5</sup> imperfect tense. Customary action, § 23.

§ 15 (1).

<sup>10</sup> tr.: 'having,' § 15 (3).

## X. THE HEAVENS.

If<sup>1</sup> you go out of the house by night and stand in the open street, among<sup>2</sup> many other<sup>2</sup> things you notice<sup>1</sup> also<sup>2</sup> the following. The sun<sup>4</sup> you do not see in the sky, for it is night, but<sup>4</sup> you see unnumbered stars and, as<sup>5</sup> the month goes on, sometimes<sup>6</sup> you see the moon and sometimes<sup>6</sup> (you see it) not. If<sup>1</sup> at any time the earth comes between the sun and the moon there occurs<sup>1</sup> an eclipse of the moon. Moreover, whenever<sup>7</sup> a storm occurs and either rain or snow

or hail falls from the clouds, then it is no longer <sup>7</sup> possible to see either <sup>8</sup> the moon or <sup>8</sup> the stars. And oftentimes by day, before sunset, when thunder and lightning have burst forth from the clouds, a thunderbolt strikes either a tall tree or a high house ; (high I say), for <sup>9</sup> the god of the sky bears-ill-will-towards <sup>10</sup> the great <sup>11</sup> things ; the small things annoy <sup>12</sup> him not at all.

<sup>1</sup> prest. genl. condition, § 47.

<sup>2</sup> tr. : 'many and other.'

<sup>3</sup> omit 'among,' and tr. : 'and also' = καὶ δὲ καὶ, § 2.

<sup>4</sup> μέν . . . δέ, § 2.

<sup>5</sup> gen. abs., § 16.

<sup>6</sup> ὅτε μέν . . . ὅτε δέ, or ἄλλοτε μέν . . . ἄλλοτε δέ (or τότε δέ).

<sup>7</sup> indef., § 39.

<sup>8</sup> repeat negative. Cf. Ex. II., note 6.

<sup>9</sup> ellipsis and γάρ, § 2.

<sup>10</sup> φθονέω and dative.

<sup>11</sup> use superlative.

<sup>12</sup> neut. pl. w. sing. verb.

## XI. THE YEAR.

The year is divided into twelve months. But in Greece these months had neither the same <sup>1</sup> names nor the same beginning that ours have. For at Athens they called their <sup>2</sup> first month Hecatombaion, which corresponds <sup>3</sup> nearly to the seventh <sup>5</sup> month of our year. The thirty days of each month were divided into three decades. The seasons of the year were reckoned sometimes <sup>4</sup> as three, sometimes <sup>4</sup> as four, and-then-again <sup>4</sup> even seven. The four seasons were Summer, Autumn, Winter, Spring. Now of these seasons the summer and the winter each had four months, but the two others each had two only.

<sup>1</sup> αὐτός, § 4 (c).

<sup>2</sup> article, § 3 (c).

<sup>3</sup> use εἶναι.

<sup>4</sup> use ἄλλοτε with μέν . . . δέ . . . δέ.

<sup>5</sup> The Attic year began with the summer solstice.

## XII. HELIOS.

In the olden-time things<sup>1</sup> in-heaven<sup>1</sup> were arranged not as they now are, but differently. For the earth was flat, and Océānus flowed-round about the earth. And towards dawn, Eos,<sup>2</sup> the rosy fingered goddess, upon a chariot, (which was) borne along by<sup>3</sup> the swift horses Lampus and Phaethon, climbed-up the sky to announce<sup>4</sup> both<sup>5</sup> to gods and<sup>5</sup> to mortals that<sup>6</sup> Helios was coming. Not-long-after<sup>7</sup> forth came Helios himself,<sup>8</sup> he also borne-along in a four-horse-chariot. The names of his horses I know well, but will not mention. And he driving through the air and along the vault of heaven, looked-down-upon all the works of men. At evening he descended into Oceanus in-the-west and the darkness came on again. After sunset, in a golden boat made by Hephaestus, Helios sailed-around again to the east.

Thus different was the world in ancient times ; but the same things must needs<sup>9</sup> happen even nowadays<sup>10</sup> in Asia; for the Great Lama there denies<sup>11</sup> that<sup>6</sup> the earth is spherical.

<sup>1</sup> neut. art. and phrase, § 7, τὰ

ἐν οὐρανῷ.

<sup>2</sup> use Homeric form, Ἑώς.

<sup>3</sup> ὑπό and gen., § 65, I. 3, δ.

<sup>4</sup> § 15 (6).

<sup>5</sup> καὶ . . . καὶ.

<sup>6</sup> after φημί, 'say, announce,' use acc. and inf. § 56 (α and δ).

<sup>7</sup> οὐ δὲ μακροῦ.

<sup>8</sup> αὐτός, § 9 (δ).

<sup>9</sup> δεῖ and inf.

<sup>10</sup> tr. : 'to-day.'

<sup>11</sup> οὐ φημι = nego.

## XIII. THE ARMY IN XENOPHON.

Each part of the army was commanded by<sup>1</sup> a general and was divided into companies-of-one-hundred.<sup>2</sup> A captain commanded<sup>3</sup> these companies-of-one-hundred,<sup>3</sup> which had two sections-of-fifty-each<sup>4</sup> or four of-twenty-five-each.<sup>4</sup> These (latter) were called enomoties,<sup>5</sup> because the twenty-five soldiers in the enomoty, being messmates, gave-an-oath<sup>6</sup> and pledged-their-faith<sup>6</sup> to one-another. The word 'taxis' in the Greek tongue, among<sup>16</sup> many other<sup>8</sup> things, also means<sup>7</sup> sometimes two companies-of-one-hundred<sup>2</sup> joined. The commander of this 'taxis' was called a 'taxiarch.'<sup>9</sup>

The Greeks had but few horsemen;<sup>10</sup> the infantry<sup>10</sup> was of-all kinds. The light-armed — that is, the bowmen and the slingers — had no shields and did not engage-in-hand-to-hand conflict;<sup>11</sup> but the peltasts, these also being light-armed soldiers, had round-leather-covered-shields.<sup>12</sup> The heavy-armed had the following armor: on the head the helmet, around the chest the cuirass, around the legs the greaves, and in-addition-to<sup>13</sup> these they carried<sup>14</sup> a large shield, a<sup>15</sup> huge spear, and a<sup>15</sup> sword or sabre.

<sup>1</sup> § 65, I. 3, *d.*

<sup>2</sup> tr.: λόχος.

<sup>3</sup> § 64, III.

<sup>4</sup> one word. See '50' and '25.'

<sup>5</sup> ὅμνυμι, 'swear.'

<sup>6</sup> tr.: 'they swore and gave their right hands.'

<sup>7</sup> δύναμαι and pred. const. § 62.

<sup>8</sup> tr.: 'many and other.'

<sup>9</sup> § 62.

<sup>10</sup> use μὲν . . . δέ.

<sup>11</sup> tr.: 'went to hands.'

<sup>12</sup> use ἡ πέλτη.

<sup>13</sup> πρὸς and dat.

<sup>14</sup> φορέω, 'wear.'

<sup>15</sup> def. article, § 3 (*a*).

<sup>16</sup> cf. note to Ex. X., 3.

**XIV. THE TRIAL OF ORONTES.** (*Cf. Anab., I., vi., 5-11.*)

When Cyrus had <sup>1</sup> summoned the generals and the captains to his tent, the trial of Orontes took place. Orontes confessed that <sup>2</sup> he-had-injured Cyrus, although <sup>3</sup> he had <sup>4</sup> himself been injured in-nothing; <sup>5</sup> he confessed also that <sup>6</sup> he had plotted against him. He therefore was led-out to death by the guard, but nowhere <sup>7</sup> in the camp did any <sup>7</sup> tomb of him ever <sup>7</sup> appear.

<sup>1</sup> aorist, § 26.

<sup>2</sup> § 56.

<sup>3</sup> § 15 (5).

<sup>4</sup> § 31.

<sup>5</sup> οὐδέν, § 63, IV. 2.

<sup>6</sup> dative, § 65, IV.

<sup>7</sup> repeat negative.

**XV. STORMING THE CAMP.**

Now, when the trumpet sounded,<sup>1</sup> twenty Rhodian slingers, with <sup>2</sup> their <sup>3</sup> slings made-ready,<sup>4</sup> and fifty Cretan archers, with <sup>2</sup> their <sup>3</sup> quivers on their shoulders and their <sup>3</sup> bows in (their) hands, crossed the river quickly where the guides showed (them); and they surprised the camp of the enemy which only a few guards were guarding. So then, after killing <sup>4</sup> these guards, burning <sup>5</sup> the tents, and slaughtering <sup>5</sup> the beasts-of-burden, they returned, taking <sup>5</sup> from the baggage food and other necessities as-much-as <sup>6</sup> they needed.

<sup>1</sup> tr.: 'he sounded with the trumpet.' <sup>4</sup> cf. § 31.

<sup>2</sup> ἔχον, § 15 (3).

<sup>3</sup> article § 3 (c).

<sup>5</sup> aor. ptc., § 26.

<sup>6</sup> gen, § 64, IV.

**XVI. THE BATTLE.**

Artaxerxes was commander of the-centre-of<sup>1</sup> his-own<sup>2</sup> force, and Tissaphernes was said to be-in-command-of<sup>3</sup> the left wing. Clearchus commanded the right wing of Cyrus's army. Now, as<sup>4</sup> the Greeks were advancing, a part of the phalanx bulged-out-of-line<sup>5</sup> and the part-left-behind<sup>6</sup> began to run at full speed. Then, indeed, the barbarians gave-way and fled. Meanwhile Cyrus was slain. Consequently it was uncertain whose was<sup>7</sup> the victory, both on-account-of the death of Cyrus and on-account-of the flight of the barbarians.

<sup>1</sup> § 4 (*d*).<sup>5</sup> cf. Anab., I., viii., 18.<sup>2</sup> see 'Pronouns,' § 9.<sup>6</sup> cf. Anab., I., viii., 18, art. and ptc. of ὑπολείπω.<sup>3</sup> § 64, III.<sup>7</sup> ind. quest., § 58.<sup>4</sup> § 16.

---

**ANIMALS, — BIRDS.****XVII. THE DYING EAGLE.**

A bowman shot an eagle with his bow. When<sup>1</sup> the eagle turned-around<sup>1</sup> in-pain,<sup>2</sup> he saw the notched-end and the feathers outside of the wound. And on seeing the feathers he uttered-this-cry : ' Woe-is-me,<sup>3</sup> I die by-means-of my own feathers !'

<sup>1</sup> nom. ptc. § 15 (1).<sup>2</sup> § 14 (*δ*).<sup>3</sup> tr. : ὁμοι.

## XVIII. THE CAT AND THE FILE.

A cat entering-into<sup>1</sup> a coppersmith's workshop began-to-lick<sup>2</sup> the file which-was-lying<sup>3</sup> there. The-result-was-that,<sup>4</sup> as<sup>5</sup> her tongue was worn away, much blood flowed. But she,<sup>6</sup> supposing that something was being taken from the iron, was pleased, and continued<sup>7</sup> to lick the file until at last she wore away her tongue completely.

<sup>1</sup> § 31.<sup>2</sup> imperfect, § 27.<sup>3</sup> § 6.<sup>4</sup> συνέβη, with inf.<sup>5</sup> § 16.<sup>6</sup> ἡ δέ, § 8, caution.<sup>7</sup> § 17 (δ), διατελλέω.

## XIX. THE CAT IN LOVE.

A cat having-fallen-in-love-with<sup>1</sup> a handsome youth, prayed to Aphrodite to change her<sup>2</sup> into a woman. And the goddess, pitying<sup>3</sup> her state,<sup>4</sup> changed her into a comely maiden. The youth also himself, when<sup>5</sup> he-beheld her, fell-in-love with<sup>1</sup> her and married her. But as<sup>6</sup> they were seated in their house, Aphrodite, wishing to know whether the cat, in-changing<sup>6</sup> her body, had changed also her habits, let-go a mouse into the midst, and the girl, forgetting<sup>8</sup> her present (circumstances), jumped-up<sup>7</sup> from her chair and<sup>7</sup> pursued<sup>7</sup> the mouse, wishing to eat-him-up. Then the goddess, vexed-at<sup>8</sup> her, restored her again to her old condition.

<sup>1</sup> use deponent ἔπαυαι, 1st aor. pass.

c. gen. It is generally used of the man.

<sup>2</sup> § 9.<sup>3</sup> aor. ptc., § 31.<sup>4</sup> tr. : τὸ πᾶθος.<sup>5</sup> § 16.<sup>6</sup> § 14 (δ).<sup>7</sup> § 15 (ι).

## XX. THE ATHENIANS HEAR A NEW THING.

Once upon a time the Athenians, growing weary, tried to stop <sup>1</sup> Demosthenes the orator from speaking <sup>2</sup> in the assembly. In order to gain their attention he said that he would like to tell them a short story. Thereupon those who had risen <sup>3</sup> to <sup>4</sup> go out sat down again, and all became silent.<sup>5</sup> The orator then said as follows: 'A young-man in the summer time hired an ass to go from the City <sup>6</sup> to Megara. At first they proceeded without any disagreement,<sup>7</sup> the young man riding upon the ass, and the master of the ass walking beside him. But at mid-day, when <sup>8</sup> the sun grew hot, they all stopped to rest, and the two men fell-to-disputing <sup>9</sup> as to <sup>10</sup> which should rest under the ass's shadow. For the master of the ass denied that <sup>11</sup> he had hired-out the shadow of the ass. While <sup>8</sup> they were disputing, the ass ran away to the City.'

When <sup>8</sup> Demosthenes had said this, he also <sup>12</sup> began-to-go-away.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> imperfect, § 27.

<sup>2</sup> infinitive, § 14 (c).

<sup>3</sup> § 6.

<sup>4</sup> construction?

<sup>5</sup> ingressive aorist, § 24.

<sup>6</sup> τὸ ἄστυ, i. e. Athens.

<sup>7</sup> ἐν ἡσυχίᾳ.

<sup>8</sup> § 16.

<sup>9</sup> use ἀμφισβητέω.

<sup>10</sup> περί with g.

<sup>11</sup> cf. § 11.

<sup>12</sup> καὶ αὐτός.



XXI. THE PIOUS BUTCHER.<sup>1</sup>

Two young men were buying meat at the same place. And <sup>2</sup> while <sup>3</sup> the butcher was not noticing, one of them stealthily <sup>4</sup> seized the meat and slipped-it-into <sup>5</sup> the other's breast-pocket.<sup>6</sup> When <sup>7</sup> the butcher <sup>7</sup> turned-around <sup>7</sup> again, and was unable to find the meat, he charged the young men with the theft,<sup>8</sup> but the one-who-had-taken-it <sup>9</sup> swore he had <sup>10</sup> it not, and the one-who-had-it <sup>9</sup> swore he hadn't <sup>10</sup> taken it. Thereupon the butcher said: 'Well, even if <sup>11</sup> you escape me by perjury, you will <sup>11</sup> not escape the gods.'

<sup>1</sup> or 'cook.'<sup>7</sup> § 14 (nom.).<sup>2</sup> καὶ δὲ, cf. § 2.<sup>8</sup> case?<sup>3</sup> § 16.<sup>9</sup> § 6.<sup>4</sup> τῷ in composition.<sup>10</sup> μή and inf., see § 18.<sup>5</sup> use καθ' ἑμὲ c. etc.<sup>11</sup> 'shall' cond. § 45a.<sup>6</sup> tr.: 'bosom.'

## XXII. THE MICE AND THE CATS.

The mice and the cats had a war. When <sup>1</sup> the mice were defeated they supposed that <sup>2</sup> they fared thus from-having-no-leaders.<sup>3</sup> Consequently, calling <sup>4</sup> an assembly, they chose <sup>5</sup> generals, not by ballot, but by-show-of-hands.<sup>6</sup> The generals, therefore, wishing to be <sup>7</sup> more conspicuous,<sup>8</sup> equipped themselves with horns. When the battle occurred, it turned-out-that <sup>9</sup> the mice were defeated. Now the others <sup>10</sup> all readily slipped into their holes, but <sup>10</sup> the generals, not being able to enter-in on account of their horns, came-into-the

power-of<sup>11</sup> the cats, and being smitten, pierced, and mocked were devoured.

<sup>1</sup> § 14.

<sup>2</sup> § 56.

<sup>3</sup> tr.: 'through anarchy.'

<sup>4</sup> aor. ptc., § 31.

<sup>5</sup> middle voice of αἰτέω.

<sup>6</sup> ptc. of χαροποιέω, § 14 (b).

<sup>7</sup> use γίγνομαι.

<sup>8</sup> nom. case, § 62.

<sup>9</sup> see Ex. XVIII., note 4.

<sup>10</sup> μέν and δέ, § 2.

<sup>11</sup> γίγνομαι c. ἐπὶ and dat. See Anab., I., i., 4.

### XXIII. THE YOUNG APES.

They say that<sup>1</sup> the ape brings-forth two young-ones, and that she loves the one<sup>2</sup> child and rears it carefully, but<sup>2</sup> the other she hates and neglects. Now it turns out by some divine chance that the one which the mother carries around in her arms is smothered, but the-neglected-one<sup>3</sup> grows-up.

<sup>1</sup> § 56.

<sup>2</sup> use ὁ μέν . . . ὁ δέ, § 8, caution.

<sup>3</sup> § 6.

### XXIV. THE MOON AND HER MOTHER.

The Moon once begged-of her mother to weave for her<sup>1</sup> close-fitting tunic, and her mother<sup>2</sup> replied: 'Yes, but<sup>3</sup> w shall I weave it to-fit<sup>4</sup>? For now<sup>5</sup> I see thee crescent, l now again<sup>5</sup> half-moon, and then gibbous,<sup>5</sup> and finally<sup>5</sup> moon. There is no possible way for such an one to<sup>6</sup> in a tunic to-fit.'<sup>4</sup>

§ 9 (b).

r. by ἡ δέ.

. by ἀλλά, § 2.

ἡμέτερος, ov.

<sup>5</sup> use μέν . . . δέ . . . δέ, with appropriate words.

<sup>6</sup> say, 'It is not how thou, being such' (c. future indic.).

## EXERCISES. PART II.

---

### XXV. ASSAULT ON A TOWN.

There was one place which was the barbarians' capital city. In this the enemy *had-all-assembled*.<sup>1</sup> Now around this was a ravine exceedingly deep, and the approaches to the place were difficult. So then, when the Greeks were not able *by-fighting*<sup>2</sup> to take the place, they<sup>3</sup> attempted to withdraw: but, *as*<sup>4</sup> the enemy attacked them, they could not go away; for the descent from the place into the ravine was *wide-enough-for-one-only*.<sup>5</sup> Therefore, they sent-for Miltiades, who was-in-command-of<sup>6</sup> the heavy-armed-men.

When these arrived the Greeks sang-the-pæan, and the trumpet sounded, and the hoplites charged on-a-run, and in-addition<sup>7</sup> the missiles were borne-along together; javelins, arrows, *sling-stones*,<sup>8</sup> and very many stones from the hand;<sup>9</sup> there were some<sup>10</sup> soldiers also who<sup>10</sup> applied fire. Consequently, on account of the multitude of the missiles, the enemy left both<sup>11</sup> the stockade and<sup>11</sup> the towers.

<sup>1</sup> συρρέω plpf. § 26.

<sup>2</sup> nom. ptc., § 14, b.

<sup>3</sup> add δη.

<sup>4</sup> § 16.

<sup>5</sup> ἐπ' ἐνός.

<sup>6</sup> say: 'commanded.'

<sup>7</sup> καὶ δη καί.

<sup>8</sup> tr.: *slings*.

<sup>9</sup> Use the plural.

<sup>10</sup> tr.: 'there were who.'

<sup>11</sup> καὶ . . . καί.

XXVI. ASSAULT ON A TOWN. (*Continued.*)

Consequently Nearchus and Philopœmen *throwing-down*<sup>1</sup> their arms, climbed-up (clad) in their tunics only, and one<sup>2</sup> drew-up another<sup>2</sup> and (then) another had-climbed-up<sup>8</sup> and the stronghold was taken,<sup>3</sup> as it seemed. And the targeteers and the light-armed *running-up*,<sup>1</sup> each plundered whatever he<sup>4</sup> could.

Now there was an acropolis within where many of the enemy had-taken-refuge.<sup>8</sup> The heavy-armed *halted-under-arms*,<sup>6</sup> some<sup>6</sup> around the palisades, and others<sup>6</sup> along the street leading<sup>7</sup> to the acropolis. Then indeed<sup>8</sup> the Greeks plundered all the city outside<sup>9</sup> of the Acropolis. But when the Greeks began to retreat, many with<sup>10</sup> wicker-shields and spears and greaves and Paphlagonian helmets ran-out-on (them) from-within, and others climbed-up on the houses, which-were<sup>7</sup> on each side of<sup>11</sup> the street leading<sup>7</sup> to the acropolis ; consequently, it was not safe to pursue the enemy to the gate which led<sup>7</sup> into the acropolis. (This you can understand<sup>12</sup>) for<sup>12</sup> they actually hurled-down great beams from-above so that<sup>18</sup> it was dangerous both to remain and to go-away ; and the night which-was-coming-on<sup>14</sup> was a cause-of-fear.<sup>15</sup>

<sup>1</sup> § 31 (α and β).

<sup>2</sup> double use of ἄλλος.

<sup>3</sup> pluperfect, why? cf. § 26.

<sup>4</sup> tr.: 'plundered what each could.'

<sup>5</sup> use τίθημι and acc.

<sup>6</sup> § 2.

<sup>7</sup> § 6.

<sup>8</sup> τότε δή.

<sup>9</sup> § 7.

<sup>10</sup> § 15, 3.

<sup>11</sup> ἐνθεν καὶ ἐνθεν.

<sup>12</sup> § 2 (end).

<sup>13</sup> § 52.

<sup>14</sup> § 14.

<sup>15</sup> tr.: 'fearful.'

XXVII. ASSAULT ON A TOWN. (*Continued.*)

While<sup>1</sup> they were fighting, some-one of the gods gives them a means of preservation. For all-of-a-sudden *one of the houses*<sup>2</sup> on the right blazes-up, *some-one-or-other*<sup>3</sup> *having-set-fire-to-it*.<sup>3</sup> When it fell-in, the enemy fled from the houses on the right. Miltiades, noticing<sup>4</sup> this, commanded<sup>5</sup> to set-fire to the houses on the left also, and these, *inasmuch as they were*<sup>6</sup> wooden, were *soon on fire*<sup>7</sup> so that<sup>8</sup> the enemy fled from these also. Then Miltiades commanded the soldiers to bring fagots into *the space between*<sup>9</sup> themselves and the enemy, and to set fire both to these and to the houses by<sup>10</sup> the stockade itself, that<sup>11</sup> the enemy might *turn their attention*<sup>12</sup> to this.

So with-difficulty the Greeks retreated from the place by-making<sup>13</sup> a fire between<sup>9</sup> themselves and the enemy. The whole city was burned-up, both the houses and the towers and the stockade, and everything else<sup>14</sup> except the citadel.

<sup>1</sup> two ways, § 16 and § 51.

<sup>2</sup> tr.: 'a house of the ones on' etc.

<sup>3</sup> § 16. Use *δοτις, δῆ*, and participle, cf. Anab. IV. 7. 25.

<sup>4</sup> § 31.

<sup>5</sup> § 59.

<sup>6</sup> tr.: 'being.'

<sup>7</sup> tr.: 'were quickly burning.'

<sup>8</sup> § 52.

<sup>9</sup> use adj. *μέσος*.

<sup>10</sup> *παρά* and acc. why?

<sup>11</sup> § 36 and § 11 (6).

<sup>12</sup> use *προσέχειν τὸν νοῦν*  
c. dat. or *πρὸς* and acc.

<sup>13</sup> § 14 (b).

<sup>14</sup> *τἄλλα*. What is *crasis*?

## XXVIII. THE ELEPHANTS.

The *Indians*,<sup>1</sup> hunt elephants in the following manner: Having chosen<sup>2</sup> a level place they dig a ditch around-about (it), five fathoms<sup>3</sup> in width<sup>4</sup> and four<sup>5</sup> in depth.<sup>4</sup> At<sup>5</sup> one place they make a crossing *by-bridging*<sup>6</sup> the ditch. Then they put-on (it) *loose-dirt*<sup>7</sup> and much grass, in order that<sup>8</sup> the elephants may suspect nothing.<sup>9</sup> Within the enclosure they place three or four tame elephants, and then the wild elephants come in by-night *in-a-herd*. Thereupon the men quickly *taking-away*<sup>10</sup> the bridge, mount upon those of *their*<sup>11</sup> elephants *which-are*<sup>12</sup> especially strong and well-broken. The tame elephants *fight-against*<sup>13</sup> the captured elephants *when-they-are*<sup>14</sup> worn-out by hunger and thirst. The men now bind-together the feet of<sup>15</sup> the wild elephants *after-they-have-been*<sup>14</sup> subdued and thrown-down,<sup>14</sup> throw<sup>16</sup> nooses<sup>17</sup> around<sup>16</sup> their necks, and themselves mount on them *as-they-lie-there*.<sup>14</sup> Afterwards they cut into their necks with a sharp sword and bind around the noose along<sup>5</sup> the wound. And thus the elephants become obedient.

<sup>1</sup> add δῆ, § 2.<sup>2</sup> insert γάρ, cf. 2.<sup>3</sup> § 64, I. 6.<sup>4</sup> § 63 (IV.).<sup>5</sup> use κατά and acc., see vocab.<sup>6</sup> § 15 (2), or § 14 (b).<sup>7</sup> ὁ χοῦς, loose dirt, soil. √χέω.<sup>8</sup> final clauses, § 36.<sup>9</sup> negative, § 18.<sup>10</sup> aor. ptc., § 31.<sup>11</sup> § 3 (c).<sup>12</sup> article and ptc., § 6.<sup>13</sup> § 65 (II.).<sup>14</sup> participle, § 14 (α).<sup>15</sup> dat., § 65 (I. 3).<sup>16</sup> one word — περιβάλλω.<sup>17</sup> dat., § 65 (V.), i. e. 'with nooses.'

XXIX. THE ELEPHANTS. (*Continued.*)

Elephants are *very*<sup>1</sup> *sagacious* animals. One<sup>2</sup> of them once picked-up *his*<sup>3</sup> rider *who-had-been-killed*<sup>4</sup> in battle, and *of-his-own-accord*<sup>5</sup> carried-him-off for burial; and another *held-a-shield-over*<sup>6</sup> his rider *who-had-fallen*.<sup>4</sup> And a certain elephant *who-had*<sup>12</sup> in-anger killed his rider afterwards died also himself<sup>5</sup> from<sup>15</sup> remorse and dejection. Once-on-a-time *I*<sup>7</sup> actually saw an elephant playing-the-cymbals while<sup>8</sup> others danced; *a-pair-of*<sup>9</sup> cymbals was fastened<sup>10</sup> to the front legs *of*<sup>11</sup> *the-one-who-was-playing-the-cymbals*<sup>4</sup> and another cymbal (was attached) to the so-called proboscis. *The cymbal-player*<sup>4</sup> beat with his proboscis the cymbal rhythmically in turn against each-of-his-two legs. And the dancers danced around, raising up and bending the front legs<sup>13</sup> rhythmically in turn, and they followed *just-as*<sup>14</sup> *he-who-played-the-cymbals*<sup>4</sup> led them.

<sup>1</sup> superl.<sup>2</sup> γάρ, § 2.<sup>3</sup> § 3 (c).<sup>4</sup> § 6.<sup>5</sup> αὐτοῦ, § 9 (b).<sup>6</sup> one word, see under 'shield.'<sup>7</sup> ἔγωγε.<sup>8</sup> καί.<sup>9</sup> tr.: by 'dual.'<sup>10</sup> § 16.<sup>11</sup> dat.<sup>12</sup> § 14.<sup>13</sup> § 7.<sup>14</sup> tr.: *whither*, and cf. § 50 (b).<sup>15</sup> use ὅτι and gen.

## XXX. ILL-MANNERED PHILOSOPHERS.

At first we feasted in quiet, and *all-sorts-of* dishes *were-provided*.<sup>1</sup> *It is not necessary*<sup>2</sup> to enumerate these, sauces, pastry, puddings, and the rest, there was everything in abundance; *but at this point*<sup>3</sup> Kleodemus *bending-over*<sup>4</sup> to Ion, "Do you see," said he, "the old man Zenophilus how he is *gobbling-down*<sup>5</sup> the relishes, and how his mantle is *filled full*<sup>6</sup> of sauce, and *how much*<sup>7</sup> he is handing over to his slave, *standing*<sup>8</sup> behind him, *supposing that*<sup>9</sup> he-is-unnoticed by the rest? Show this, do, to Socrates also, *that*<sup>10</sup> he may be witness." Now when the slaves, who served the viands, *stopped*<sup>11</sup> for a little, *as is customary*,<sup>12</sup> Aristarchus, who *had planned*<sup>13</sup> *that*<sup>14</sup> not even that space-of-time should be dull or unoccupied, bade the clown come in and say or do something absurd, *that*<sup>15</sup> the guests might make merry *all-the-more*.<sup>16</sup>

<sup>1</sup> pluperfect of παρασκευάζω, cf. § 26.

<sup>2</sup> οὐδὲν δὲ χροή.

<sup>3</sup> ἐν δὲ τούτῳ.

<sup>4</sup> § 31.

<sup>5</sup> use κατεσθίω.

<sup>6</sup> perf. tense. Why? § 25. Use ἀνα-  
πλήρημι c. gen.

<sup>7</sup> tr.: ὅσα.

<sup>8</sup> perf. of ἵστημι, cf. § 26 (caution).

<sup>9</sup> § 56 (a).

<sup>10</sup> § 36.

<sup>11</sup> use διαλείπω.

<sup>12</sup> tr.: ὥσπερ εἰώθασι.

<sup>13</sup> § 14.

<sup>14</sup> c. inf. or ὥπως and finite  
verb, § 37. For nega-  
tive, see § 18.

<sup>15</sup> ἔτι μᾶλλον.



## XXXI. THE CLOWN AND THE CYNIC.

Then there came in a mis-shapen fellow, his head <sup>1</sup> *shaved completely*, <sup>2</sup> *keeping* <sup>3</sup> a few hairs only straight up on his crown. He danced, gesticulating *and* <sup>4</sup> whirling around *so as to* <sup>5</sup> appear the more absurd, and concocting verses, *he-went-through with-them* <sup>6</sup> in *Egyptian* <sup>7</sup> dialect; and, finally, he *made-game-of* <sup>8</sup> the company. Now the others laughed, but *Kyniscus* <sup>9</sup> the cynic, when the clown called *him* <sup>10</sup> a Maltese lap-dog, <sup>10</sup> *grew-angry* <sup>11</sup> and, *throwing-aside* <sup>12</sup> his blanket, challenged him to *box-and-wrestle* <sup>13</sup> or *else*, <sup>14</sup> said he, *he'd* <sup>15</sup> beat him with his staff. The affair was *most delicious*, <sup>16</sup> a philosopher pitted-against a clown, striking and being struck in turn, and at last Kyniscus was beaten by the clown. Finally there was set before us the following: For each guest one fowl, *boar's-meat*, <sup>17</sup> *hare's-meat*, <sup>17</sup> a fish hot from the frying-pan, sesamé-cakes and sweet-meats; all this *it was allowable* <sup>18</sup> to carry home. *These were served*, <sup>19</sup> not *in one platter* <sup>19</sup> for each, but for two *in common* <sup>19</sup> on one table, and *it was expected* <sup>20</sup> that each of the two should take *the portion before him*. <sup>21</sup>

<sup>1</sup> case?<sup>2</sup> perf.; why? § 25.<sup>3</sup> ἔχων.<sup>4</sup> . . . † τε . . . καί.<sup>5</sup> tr.: 'in order to.'<sup>6</sup> use διαφέρωμαι.<sup>7</sup> ptc. Αἰγυπτιαίων, cf. Anab. III. i. 26.<sup>8</sup> one word.<sup>9</sup> rule for accent? § 74 (5).<sup>10</sup> double acc. § 63, VI.<sup>11</sup> ingress. aorist, § 24. <sup>12</sup> § 31.<sup>13</sup> παγκρατιάειν.<sup>14</sup> εἰ δὲ μή.<sup>15</sup> future.<sup>16</sup> superl. of ἡδύς.<sup>17</sup> tr.: κρέας ὄος. Of hare = λαγῶς, adj.<sup>18</sup> use εἶναι.<sup>19</sup> tr.: 'there was placed . . . one . . . common.'<sup>20</sup> use χρῆν.<sup>21</sup> use article, prep., and reflexive, cf. § 7.

XXXII. THE CLOWN AND THE CYNIC. (*Continued.*)

Now the others, each of them, took up *what was before him*<sup>1</sup> *as was-right*.<sup>2</sup> A certain philosopher,<sup>3</sup> Didymus by name, happened *to be reclining*<sup>4</sup> alone,<sup>5</sup> for his *companion*<sup>6</sup> *had gone-away*.<sup>7</sup> This Didymus therefore *claimed-it-as-his-right*<sup>8</sup> to carry off *in-addition*<sup>9</sup> the food *which*<sup>10</sup> *had-been-set-out* for the absent Zeno, for he said *that*<sup>11</sup> all this *had-been-set-out* for himself only. So he *fought with*<sup>12</sup> the servants, while they laying hold of the chicken *pulled-in-the-contrary-direction* as though *trying-to-drag-off*<sup>13</sup> the corpse of Patroclus, and finally Didymus *was conquered*<sup>14</sup> and let-go, occasioning much laughter to his fellow banqueters, particularly when later on he grew-sulky as though he had been *very badly treated*.<sup>15</sup>

<sup>1</sup> see Ex. XXXI., note 21.<sup>2</sup> ὡς ἔδει.<sup>3</sup> add † δέ, § 1.<sup>4</sup> § 17.<sup>5</sup> tr.: 'having been left alone.'<sup>6</sup> use ὁ συμπίπτῃς.<sup>7</sup> pluperf., cf. § 26.<sup>8</sup> use ἀξιόω.<sup>9</sup> καί.<sup>10</sup> § 6.<sup>11</sup> § 11. 3 and § 54.<sup>12</sup> § 65, II.<sup>13</sup> imperfect of attempted action (§ 27) represented by the pres. ptc.<sup>14</sup> aorist, why?<sup>15</sup> τὰ μέγιστα ἡδικοημένος.

## XXXIII. EGYPTIAN CATS.

The cat<sup>1</sup> is a very remarkable animal both in many *other respects* and especially because it has a quick-moving tail. From *this circumstance*<sup>2</sup> came, it is said, the animal's<sup>3</sup> name. Now the Egyptians consider the cat sacred. *Whenever*<sup>4</sup> a fire occurs, the cats *use every effort*<sup>5</sup> to jump-into the fire. *If ever*<sup>6</sup> a cat is burnt-up the Egyptians *consider*<sup>6</sup> it most especially *unlucky*.<sup>7</sup> They therefore neglect extinguishing *that-which-is-burning*, whatever<sup>8</sup> it may be, attempting only to keep-off the cats from the fire. But the cats, slipping-between and leaping-over the men, *try-to-jump-into*<sup>9</sup> the fire, and *whenever*<sup>4</sup> this happens great grief overtakes the Egyptians.

<sup>1</sup> particle, § 1.<sup>2</sup> use οὗτος.<sup>3</sup> tr.: 'the name became to the animal.'<sup>4</sup> § 51 (δ). Indefinite temporal clause.<sup>5</sup> tr.: παντοιοι γίγνονται βουλόμενοι.<sup>6</sup> § 47 (5).<sup>7</sup> tr.: δυστυχώς εχεν.<sup>8</sup> § 49. Compare this with notes 4 and 6.<sup>9</sup> § 27.XXXIV. EGYPTIAN CATS. (*Continued.*)

In whatsoever houses a cat dies *a natural death*,<sup>1</sup> the inhabitants all shave their eyebrows; *if (ever)*<sup>2</sup> a dog dies they *shave*<sup>2</sup> their whole body and head. Now *the cats*<sup>3</sup> *after*<sup>4</sup> they have been embalmed, are buried in a certain city, the name of which I will not mention, *although*<sup>5</sup> I know it well; the *dogs*<sup>8</sup> *each one*<sup>8</sup> buries in his<sup>9</sup> own city *respectively*.<sup>8</sup> The *Egyptians* embalm both cats and dogs *as carefully as possible*,<sup>6</sup>

but the bears and the wolves, which are much larger than foxes, they bury *wherever*<sup>7</sup> they are found.

<sup>1</sup> ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου.

<sup>6</sup> ὥς, with superl. of adverb.

<sup>2</sup> § 47 (5).

<sup>7</sup> §§ 49 and 50.

<sup>3</sup> § 2.

<sup>8</sup> nom. pl. of ἑκαστος.

<sup>4</sup> § 15 (1).

<sup>5</sup> § 15 (5).

<sup>9</sup> plural, gen.

### XXXV. THE TIGER.

The tiger is much more valiant *than*<sup>1</sup> the elephant. Nausimachus says *that*<sup>2</sup> he once saw the skin of a tiger, but never saw a tiger itself. The Indians say *that*<sup>2</sup> a tiger is *in-size*<sup>3</sup> as-large-as the largest horse, *in-swiftness*<sup>3</sup> and *in strength*<sup>3</sup> it resembles nothing<sup>4</sup> else. (*And this is a just opinion*) for<sup>5</sup> a tiger, whenever<sup>6</sup> it meets an elephant,<sup>4</sup> leaps-upon the head<sup>7</sup> of the elephant and easily strangles it.

<sup>1</sup> § 64, VIII.

<sup>3</sup> § 63, IV.

<sup>5</sup> ellipsis. γάρ, § 2.

<sup>2</sup> § 56.

<sup>4</sup> § 65, II. 1.

<sup>6</sup> § 51 (h).

<sup>7</sup> § 65 (IV.).

### XXXVI. THE GOLD-DIGGING ANTS.

In India there are great ants, and these dig-up the gold, not for-the-sake-of the gold itself, but in-accordance-with their nature, they do it *that*<sup>1</sup> they may themselves burrow there, just as the small ants here in Greece dig-up a small quantity of earth.<sup>2</sup> But the ants there dig-up much earth *in-proportion-to*<sup>3</sup> their size, for although<sup>4</sup> they are smaller than<sup>5</sup> dogs they are larger than<sup>5</sup> foxes. Now the ground there is full-of-gold, and from it gold is thus produced for the Indians.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> § 36.

<sup>4</sup> § 15 (5).

<sup>2</sup> use ὁ χρὸς, cf. Ex. XXVIII., note 7.

<sup>5</sup> § 64, VIII.

<sup>3</sup> κατὰ λόγον c. gen.

<sup>6</sup> § 65, I. 3.

## XXXVII. THE VOYAGE TO THE MOON.

Once-upon-a-time, *starting-out*<sup>1</sup> from the Pillars of *Hercules*<sup>2</sup> *with*<sup>3</sup> fifty of my comrades, who had the same inclination as myself, I was making the voyage towards the western ocean. Now *among*<sup>4</sup> many other<sup>4</sup> things<sup>4</sup> there occurred also<sup>4</sup> the following: —

One-day a typhoon suddenly came upon (us) and *whirling-aloft*<sup>6</sup> the ship *about*<sup>6</sup> three-thousand furlongs, *did-not-let-it-down-again*<sup>7</sup> into the sea, but carried it along *on-high*.<sup>8</sup> When we had thus proceeded in the air *for*<sup>9</sup> seven days and *just-as-many*<sup>10</sup> nights, we beheld on the eighth a certain large country, *as it were*<sup>11</sup> an island radiant and spherical. Here<sup>12</sup> we moored *and*<sup>13</sup> disembarked.

<sup>1</sup> aor. pass. ptc. (deponent sense  
ὀρμῶ).

<sup>2</sup> adjective.

<sup>3</sup> 15 (3).

<sup>4</sup> see Ex. X. notes 2 and 3.

<sup>5</sup> tense?

<sup>6</sup> ὅσον ἐπὶ c. acc.

<sup>7</sup> use οὐκέρη and καθιέναι.

<sup>8</sup> adjective with 'ship.'

<sup>9</sup> case? § 63, III.

<sup>10</sup> tr.: 'equal.'

<sup>11</sup> καθάπερ.

<sup>12</sup> particle, § 1.

<sup>13</sup> § 1 (caution).

XXXVIII. VOYAGE TO THE MOON. (*Continued.*)

On inspecting<sup>1</sup> the country we found *that it was*<sup>2</sup> inhabited *and*<sup>3</sup> cultivated. By day we saw nothing from-thence but as night *came-on*<sup>4</sup> there appeared to us many other islands near by, some larger and some smaller, resembling *fire*<sup>5</sup> *in color*,<sup>6</sup> and there appeared also another land below, *which had*<sup>7</sup> in it cities and rivers and seas and woods and mountains. This, therefore, we conjectured was<sup>10</sup> the one inhabited by mortals.

*As*<sup>8</sup> we were proceeding farther we met and were arrested by the Gypocentaurs *as they called themselves*.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> insert particle, § 1.

<sup>6</sup> case? § 63.

<sup>2</sup> § 56 (c).

<sup>7</sup> § 14.

<sup>3</sup> . . . † τε . . . καί.

<sup>8</sup> § 14 (δ).

<sup>4</sup> use ἐπιγυγνομαι.

<sup>9</sup> tr.: 'called.'

<sup>5</sup> case? § 65 (II.).

<sup>10</sup> § 56 a.

### XXXIX. THE GYPOCENTAURS.

Now these *Gypocentaurs*<sup>1</sup> are men *who ride*<sup>2</sup> on large vultures, using the birds<sup>3</sup> like horses.<sup>4</sup> *This is possible, for*<sup>4</sup> their vultures are large and *as-a-rule*<sup>5</sup> three-headed. One could<sup>6</sup> learn their size *from the fact that*<sup>7</sup> each of their feathers is longer and stouter than the mast of a large merchant-man. Now these Gypocentaurs *had orders*<sup>8</sup> to *skim-along*<sup>9</sup> the ground *and*<sup>10</sup> to bring *any*<sup>11</sup> stranger *who*<sup>11</sup> should be found, *to*<sup>12</sup> the king. So then arresting<sup>13</sup> us they take us *to*<sup>12</sup> him. *But he*,<sup>14</sup> looking<sup>13</sup> at us and *making-a-uess* from our dress, said: 'Strangers,<sup>15</sup> you are<sup>16</sup> Greeks, are you not?'<sup>16</sup> And when we admitted it, 'How then,' said he, 'did you come hither, *and*<sup>10</sup> pass through such a tract of air?'

<sup>1</sup> derivation?

<sup>9</sup> tr.: 'to them skimming.'

<sup>2</sup> § 14.

<sup>10</sup> § 1 (caution).

<sup>3</sup> case?

<sup>11</sup> tr.: if . . . any, and see § 47.

<sup>4</sup> § 2.

<sup>12</sup> ὡς, as prep. w. acc.

<sup>5</sup> ὡς ἐπ' αὐτῶν, freq. in Hdt.

<sup>13</sup> tense?

<sup>6</sup> § 33 (δ).

<sup>14</sup> § 2 (end, p. 5).

<sup>7</sup> tr.: 'from this; for . . .'

<sup>15</sup> § 66.

<sup>8</sup> tr.: 'it has been ordered.' Perf.,

<sup>16</sup> ἀρ' οὐ(χ).

§ 25.

XL. THE GYPOCENTAURS. (*Continued.*)

So we told him all. Then he began *and*<sup>1</sup> *told us in-detail*<sup>2</sup> *his own story*,<sup>3</sup> *how-that*<sup>4</sup> once *when he was*<sup>5</sup> a mortal, Endymion<sup>6</sup> by name, he was carried-off *while sleeping*<sup>5</sup> from our earth and *became king*<sup>7</sup> of this country; and he said that his land was *the one which*<sup>12</sup> appeared to us (here) below (to be) the Moon. 'But cheer-up,' said he, 'and suspect no danger. If<sup>8</sup> I shall once straighten-out this war which I am waging-against *those who dwell* in the Sun, *ye-shall-live-out-your-lives*<sup>9</sup> *with*<sup>10</sup> me *in-the-most-blissful-fashion.*'<sup>11</sup>

<sup>1</sup> § 1 (caution).<sup>2</sup> διεξέταλ.<sup>3</sup> article, preposition, and reflexive, § 7.<sup>4</sup> ὅς, § 54.<sup>5</sup> § 15 (1).<sup>6</sup> derivation?<sup>7</sup> § 24.<sup>8</sup> § 45 (a).<sup>9</sup> καταβίω, cf. § 45 (a).<sup>10</sup> παρὰ and what case?<sup>11</sup> superl. of adverb from εὐδαίμων.<sup>12</sup> § 6.

## XLI. THE MEN IN THE MOON.

Concerning<sup>1</sup> their eyes I hesitate to tell what sort they have<sup>2</sup> *lest*<sup>3</sup> some one may suppose *that*<sup>4</sup> *I am romancing*,<sup>5</sup> nevertheless, I will tell this also. They have eyes *which-can-be-taken-out*,<sup>6</sup> and he that wishes to do so, takes his out and *keeps them put-away*<sup>7</sup> *until*<sup>8</sup> he needs to see, and then putting<sup>9</sup> them in again, *takes-a-look*,<sup>10</sup> and many, *who have lost*<sup>11</sup> their own, see *by borrowing*<sup>12</sup> from others. And there are some, the rich, who have many eyes put away. Their<sup>13</sup> ears are the leaves of plane trees. Again I beheld still another wonder in the palace. A very large mirror is placed over a well *which is*<sup>14</sup> not very deep, now, *if*<sup>15</sup> one *ever*<sup>16</sup> descends into the well, he hears<sup>16</sup> all things *that are said*<sup>16</sup>

*amongst*<sup>17</sup> us on the Earth, and if<sup>15</sup> one ever looks into the mirror, he sees<sup>16</sup> all cities and all nations *just as if*<sup>18</sup> *he were standing over*<sup>19</sup> each. Then I actually saw my own household and all my country, but whether they also saw me, *I cannot tell*<sup>20</sup> with certainty. *Whoever*<sup>21</sup> does *not*<sup>21</sup> believe that these things *are so*<sup>22</sup> will<sup>24</sup> know *how true a tale I tell*<sup>23</sup> if ever<sup>24</sup> he shall travel thither in person.

<sup>1</sup> μέντοι, inserted.

<sup>2</sup> indirect question, § 58.

<sup>3</sup> § 38.

<sup>4</sup> § 56 (a).

<sup>5</sup> use ψεύδεσθαι.

<sup>6</sup> περιαιπετός. Derivation?

<sup>7</sup> one word. Use φυλάττω.

<sup>8</sup> § 51.

<sup>9</sup> tense?

<sup>10</sup> use ὁράω.

<sup>11</sup> § 13.

<sup>12</sup> § 14 (b).

<sup>13</sup> dat. of pers. pronoun, § 65 I. (3).

<sup>14</sup> omit.

<sup>15</sup> § 47 (5).

<sup>16</sup> § 6.

<sup>17</sup> παρὰ and what case?

<sup>18</sup> ὥσπερ.

<sup>19</sup> perf. ptc., ἐφίστημι and dat., cf. § 25.

<sup>20</sup> tr.: 'I have not to say.'

<sup>21</sup> § 50 (a) and cf. § 39.

<sup>22</sup> οὕτως ἔχειν.

<sup>23</sup> tr.: 'How I say true things.'

<sup>24</sup> § 45 (a) and compare § 41.

## XLII. STORMING THE TOWER.

Miltiades and the captains arrived about midnight and tried to take the tower. But they could not; for it was high and large, and contained many fighting men. They then attempted to undermine the tower. Now the wall was *eight bricks*<sup>1</sup> *thick*<sup>2</sup> but *by*<sup>3</sup> day-break it *had been dug-through*.<sup>4</sup> And when the first light shone through, some-one from within with a large ox-spit smote *straight-through* the thigh of the foremost one of the party who were undermining the wall, and *for-the-rest-of-the-time*<sup>5</sup> *by shooting-through*<sup>6</sup> (the opening) made it unsafe even to approach at-all. *Inasmuch*<sup>7</sup> now *as*<sup>7</sup> the enemy cried out and kindled-beacon-fires, the Assyrian *heavy-armed* and about ninety mercenary cavalry



of the king and about six-hundred archers and many others, brought-aid to *those*<sup>8</sup> in the tower. Then indeed it was *high-time*<sup>9</sup> for the Greeks to consider how<sup>10</sup> they should retreat.<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> ἐπὶ and genitive.

<sup>6</sup> § 14 (δ).

<sup>2</sup> τὸ εἶρος.

<sup>7</sup> § 16.

<sup>3</sup> use εἶμα.

<sup>8</sup> § 7.

<sup>4</sup> pluperfect, but see § 26.

<sup>9</sup> ἄρα.

<sup>5</sup> τὸ λοιπόν. Also τοῦ λοιποῦ in Hdt., etc.

<sup>10</sup> tr.: 'How the retreat shall be.'

### XLIII. AUCTION OF A PHILOSOPHER.

*Hermes.* I offer for sale<sup>1</sup> the best life, the most reverend, who will buy?

*A Buyer.* He is not ignoble in appearance,<sup>2</sup> but in what is he especially skilled?<sup>3</sup>

*Hermes.* Arithmetic, astronomy, jugglery, geometry, music, magic. You see a full-fledged philosopher.

*Buyer.* I say you!<sup>4</sup> from-what-country<sup>5</sup> are you?

*Pythagoras.* From Samos.<sup>6</sup>

*Buyer.* Where were you educated?

*Pythagoras.* In Egypt among<sup>7</sup> the wise men there.

*Buyer.* Come now, if<sup>8</sup> I buy you, what<sup>9</sup> will<sup>8</sup> you teach me?<sup>9</sup>

*Pythagoras.* I will teach you<sup>9</sup> nothing,<sup>9</sup> but will-recall-to-mind.<sup>10</sup>

*Buyer.* How do you recall to mind?

*Pythagoras.* First a long silence and no talking<sup>11</sup> for<sup>12</sup> five whole years.

*Buyer.* Methinks it were<sup>13</sup> better for you to educate the dumb; I<sup>14</sup> am talkative and do not wish to turn-into<sup>15</sup> a statue.

*Pythagoras.* Then I will teach you music and geometry, and above all<sup>18</sup> to count.

*Buyer.* But *I know how*<sup>17</sup> to count already.

*Pythagoras.* How do you count?

*Buyer.* One, two, three, four.

*Pythagoras.* *There now!*<sup>18</sup> What you consider four, that is ten and the perfect triangle and our oath.

*Buyer.* Well, by your greatest oath, (number) four, never did I hear more miraculous discourse.

*Pythagoras.* In addition to these<sup>19</sup> and other useful things you shall learn that<sup>20</sup> you are not yourself but another.

*Buyer.* What do you say?<sup>21</sup> I am another and not this one who am now talking with you?

*Pythagoras.* Now you are he, but long ago you appeared in another body and under another name, and again in time you will change-over into another.

*Buyer.* O Hermes, for-how-much<sup>22</sup> do you offer<sup>1</sup> this man?

*Hermes.* For ten minæ.<sup>23</sup>

*Buyer.* He's mine at that price.<sup>23</sup>

<sup>1</sup> § 27.

<sup>2</sup> case?

<sup>3</sup> tr.: 'what does he know especially?'

<sup>4</sup> οὗτος! § 9 (end).

<sup>5</sup> ποδαπός.

<sup>6</sup> adjective.

<sup>7</sup> παρά, w. what case?

<sup>8</sup> § 45 (a).

<sup>9</sup> double acc. § 63, V.

<sup>10</sup> ἀναμνησκω.

<sup>11</sup> λαλεῖν μηδέν.

<sup>12</sup> δίδω, c. gen., see Vocabulary.

<sup>13</sup> εἶναι ἄν, see § 55 (2).

<sup>14</sup> γάρ, § 2.

<sup>15</sup> γίγνομαι.

<sup>16</sup> καὶ δὴ καί, § 2.

<sup>17</sup> § 56 (d).

<sup>18</sup> tr.: you see? ὁρᾷς;

<sup>19</sup> πρὸς δὲ τούτοις.

<sup>20</sup> § 56 and § 57 (a).

<sup>21</sup> or tr.: 'how do you say?'

<sup>22</sup> case? § 64, V. 4.

<sup>23</sup> tr.: 'I have him, taking for so much.'

## XLIV. CHARON'S BILL.

*Hermes.* Let's reckon up,<sup>1</sup> *Ferryman*,<sup>2</sup> if you please,<sup>3</sup> how much you owe me *by-this-time*,<sup>4</sup> *that*<sup>5</sup> we may not hereafter quarrel *at-all*<sup>6</sup> about these things.

*Charon.* Let's reckon up, *Hermes*; for it is better *to have it settled*<sup>7</sup> without-trouble.

*Hermes.* Well first, I bought *at your request*<sup>8</sup> an anchor *for*<sup>9</sup> five drachmæ.

*Charon.* A high price<sup>10</sup> you say!

*Hermes.* Yes, *by*<sup>11</sup> *Hades*, I bought them for the five drachmæ and a thole-strap for two obols.

*Charon.* Well, set down five drachmæ and two obols.

*Hermes.* And a darning-needle for the sail: *it cost me*<sup>12</sup> five obols.

*Charon.* Add them in<sup>13</sup> also.

*Hermes.* And bees-wax to plaster the seams of the skiff, and nails and a coil-of-rope from which you made the hal-yard, all for two drachmæ.

*Charon.* Well, you bought them cheap.

*Hermes.* These are<sup>14</sup> (the items) *unless*<sup>14</sup> something has escaped me in the reckoning. Now, then, when do you say that you will pay-up?

*Charon.* At present, *Hermes*, it is impossible; but *if*<sup>15</sup> some pestilence or war shall send them down in crowds, then *it will be possible*<sup>15</sup> to save a little *by reckoning short*<sup>16</sup> the fares.

*Hermes.* Well, then, I will sit down *and*<sup>17</sup> pray for the very worst (things) to happen *that*<sup>5</sup> I *may-get-my-money-back*<sup>18</sup> [from them].

*Charon.* It is not possible otherwise, Hermes ; for now, as you see, it is (time of) peace and only a few come down to us.

<sup>1</sup> § 35.

<sup>2</sup> § 66.

<sup>3</sup> εἰ δοκεῖ.

<sup>4</sup> ἡδη.

<sup>5</sup> § 11.

<sup>6</sup> use enclitic τις.

<sup>7</sup> pf. of ὀρίζω. Derivation?

<sup>8</sup> dat. of ptc.

<sup>9</sup> case ? § 64, V. 4.

<sup>10</sup> πολλοῦ.

<sup>11</sup> § 63, IX.

<sup>12</sup> tr.: 'I threw down,' use κατα-βάλλω.

<sup>13</sup> use προστιθημι.

<sup>14</sup> § 42 (1).

<sup>15</sup> § 45 (a).

<sup>16</sup> § 14 (b).

<sup>17</sup> § 1 (caution).

<sup>18</sup> use ἀπολαμβάνω.

## EXERCISES. PART III.

---

### XLV. SWELL-FOOT.

Laius, son of Labdacus and grandson of Polydorus, was King of Thebes. Now he learned from an oracle, that his son was fated to slay him. When, therefore, a son was born to him, he delivered him over, with his ankles pierced through, to a slave to expose on Mount Cithaeron. From this the boy was named 'Swell-foot.' The slave, pitying the child, gave him over to a shepherd, who brought him and gave him to Polybus and Merope, king and queen of Corinth. Here he was brought up with them as <sup>1</sup> their son. After many years Oedipus learned from an oracle, that he was fated to slay his father. So then, supposing that Polybus was his father, he fled towards Thebes to *avoid-slaying* <sup>2</sup> him.

As he was journeying he met and slew both Laius himself and his attendants.

Afterwards he became king of Thebes, since none knew that he had slain Laius. If you had then seen him ruling, you would have accounted him the happiest of mankind; but <sup>3</sup> it is necessary first to know the outcome of everything, and to remember that it has been well said by men of old, 'Do not praise the day until the evening.'

<sup>1</sup> use *ὅν*.

<sup>2</sup> use τοῦ μή, etc.

<sup>3</sup> add γὰρ.

## XLVI. OEDIPUS AND LAIUS.

Afterwards, when he had himself *become-king*<sup>1</sup> of Thebes, Oedipus tells Jocasta the queen about this, speaking as follows : ' I was fleeing the Corinthian land, that I might never see the accomplishment of the evil oracles, when there met me, as-I-journeyed, a charioteer and an old-man on a chariot drawn-by-colts, and they both *tried-to-drive*<sup>2</sup> me by violence from the road. Therefore in-anger I strike the charioteer, the one who-was-trying-to-turn<sup>3</sup> me aside ; but the old-man, watching me from the chariot, as I was-passing-by, fetched me a blow on my head with the double-goad. He, however, paid no equal penalty ; for, stricken by this hand of-mine, backward he rolls from the chariot, and then I slay all.'

In time, Oedipus, learning that he was a parricide and that the oracles had their irremediable accomplishment, blinded himself by striking his eyes with the brooches of Jocasta's dress.

Now even if Oedipus had not slain Laius in this way and at this time, it would have come to pass in some way or other ; for the oracles had so decreed. The tragic poets give many instances of such things, showing how fruitless it is for man to try to resist the will of the Fates, who rule even above Zeus himself.

<sup>1</sup> § 24.<sup>2</sup> what tense ?<sup>3</sup> tense of participle ?

**XLVII. FLOOD-TIME IN EGYPT.**

Once I went abroad to Egypt. Just at that season, as it happened, the Nile had overflowed its banks, and whenever this occurs, the whole of the land turns into a sea, only the cities rising above the surface, here and there like islands. Now I was bidden to a banquet in Memphis ; so then, starting from Naucratis, we sailed straight across<sup>1</sup> the plain. If it had not been for the inundation, we should have been compelled to sail along the river by the city Cercasorus, where the Nile divides and forms the Delta. As it was,<sup>2</sup> sailing across the plain we left the river on the left hand before we sighted Cercasorus, and passing by the pyramid of Cheops on our right, we arrived at Memphis and I went at once to my friend's house.

<sup>1</sup> use μέσος.<sup>2</sup> use νῆν.**XLVIII. MEMENTO MORI.**

Now concerning the other things which the Egyptians do, and what they eat, there is no need that I should write in detail : they eat bread and drink wine, and have all other things such as are necessary. That which I am going to tell is very remarkable. Whenever the guests have eaten enough and are about to taste the wine, a man carries around in a coffin a small wooden corpse. This wooden image represents Osiris the king of the dead. As the man shows this corpse, he says to each of the company : ‘ Let us eat and be merry, for to-morrow we die.’ So then, that evening in *Memphis*, when the man had said this, the others *fell to*

*drinking*<sup>1</sup> immediately, that they might lose no moment of this short life, but my goblet stood there long unemptied, and, as Homer says, the appetite for banqueting failed me.

<sup>1</sup> tense (?)

#### XLIX. BURIED ALIVE.

When the Greeks had come to Pontus, it seemed good to them to make an examination of the conduct of the generals during the descent to the sea. Amongst the accusations which were brought against the commanders, Xenophon was accused of having beaten a soldier while on the march. This drew from Xenophon the real story.<sup>1</sup> He admitted that he had struck the complainant, but had done so to punish him for his wickedness. 'I found you,' said Xenophon, 'driving a mule, and I compelled you to carry a wounded soldier, because the enemy were following close behind. Afterwards as I was passing by, I saw you digging a grave to bury the soldier, and I commended you, supposing that he was dead. As I stood pitying the dead man, he suddenly moved his foot. 'Why he is alive!' I exclaimed, but you declared, that, even if he were alive, you would not carry him farther. Then, as you were clearly *shown up to be*<sup>2</sup> on the point of burying a man not yet dead, I struck you, it is true, once or twice. I had not time to do more, for the enemy were approaching, otherwise I would not have stopped until I had caused you also to have need of a bearer! When Xenophon had thus spoken, all the by-standers commended him.

<sup>1</sup> turn whole sentence freely.

<sup>2</sup> *φαίνομαι* with particip., § 57 (b).



**L. NITOCRIS'S REVENGE.**

Herodotus tells a story which is worthy of mention about a queen of Egypt. The Egyptians, it seems, once on a time slew their king either through hatred of him or for some other reason which I cannot tell with certainty. They then chose as queen Nitocris, the sister of the dead king. When Nitocris became queen, she made the following plan to avenge her brother. She summoned to a banquet all the nobles whom she knew to have been concerned in the king's death. This banquet she commanded to be made ready in a large underground room. When they had all assembled and were feasting, Nitocris withdrew with the remark that she would now leave the men to drink their fill by themselves. Upon them, while they were pledging her health, she let in the river by a large channel, which had been so constructed as to fill the chamber before any escaped. Thus did Nitocris take vengeance upon her brother's murderers. She, it is said, fearing lest their friends should punish her in turn, flung herself into a room full of ashes.

## LI. STORMING A STRONGHOLD.

The horrors of war have often been described, and not least vividly has Xenophon detailed them in the fourth book of the *Anabasis*. The unfortunate Taochians, he tells us, were struck with terror by the approach of the Greeks. They therefore gathered together into a stronghold all their property, their wives and their little-ones to save them from the on-coming enemy. The place where they had assembled was almost completely surrounded by a river and was moreover precipitous and difficult of access. The Taochians when assembled said one to another: 'Here let us stand firm and whenever the enemy shall approach, let us roll down stones upon them. . On this height our wives and our children will be safe from their missiles, and if the enemy at last force an entrance we can at least hurl our children from these cliffs and fling ourselves *down on top*<sup>1</sup> of them, for it is better for us all to perish by our own hands than to come into the power of the enemy.' And this they did when the fight went against them. Before the victorious Greeks rushed in, the women flung themselves and their babes down the cliffs, and those men who were not already slain or wounded in the attack did the same. Thus does man treat his fellows, so that, if you should ask me whether men at war or wild beasts are the more cruel, I should not know<sup>2</sup> how to answer without hesitation.

<sup>1</sup> use double comp., ἐπι-κατα-.<sup>2</sup> use οὐκ ἔχην.

**LII. DARIUS SPRAINS HIS ANKLE.**

It happened once upon a time, that Darius, king of the Persians, fell from his horse and sprained his ankle. When the king had suffered for a whole week, both day and night, and the native physicians were unable to cure him, he ordered them to be scourged and then to be put to death. Hearing now, that there was a skilful physician among the prisoners of war, he summoned him in great haste. This physician was a Greek, Democedes by name, the most experienced in medicine of all the men of his time. Now Democedes feared, that, if he should let his skill be known, he would never be allowed to depart from the Persian court. Therefore he denied that he was a physician. When threats were brought to bear, however, he admitted that he understood medicine, though insufficiently. In a few days he made the king sound again. Darius then presented him with two pairs of golden fetters, but afterwards, when Democedes asked why he doubled his chains, the king sent him to his wives and told the man who conducted him to say to them, that this man had healed the king. From them Democedes received much gold, and thereafter was held in great esteem at the court of Darius. Some time after he escaped to Crotona.

## LIII. TITURIUS AND COTTA.

Titurius therefore, upon seeing Ambiorix in the distance urging on his men, sends his interpreter Cnaeus Pompey to him to ask *for quarter*<sup>1</sup> for himself and for his soldiers. Ambiorix<sup>2</sup> when addressed answers: 'If you want to have a talk with me, you may. I hope that I can induce my men to spare your soldiers. As to yourself no harm shall be done to you if you entrust yourself to me, — on that I pledge my faith.'<sup>3</sup> Titurius communicates this to Cotta, who had been wounded, and asks him whether he approves of stopping the fight and having a conference with Ambiorix, adding that he hoped he could secure<sup>4</sup> from him their own and the soldiers' safety.<sup>4</sup> Cotta vows he won't go to an enemy who is in arms, and he persists in his determination. After this, as a result of his cowardice, Titurius was ignominiously slain, while trying to obtain terms from Ambiorix. Cotta too was slain, but he fell while fighting bravely.

<sup>1</sup> use *σάξω*.<sup>2</sup> tr.: *ἐκείνος*.<sup>3</sup> tr.: both into Or. Recta and Or. Obliqua.<sup>4</sup> use *πείθω* and *σάξω*.

## LIV. THE FALSE PROPHETS.

Among the Scythians it sometimes happens, that the king *falls ill*; <sup>1</sup> whenever this occurs he sends for some of his prophets, of whom he has a large number. When they arrive, they say, as indeed it is expected of them, that some one has sworn falsely by the royal hearth and for that reason the king is ill. Now this matter is not without danger to the prophets. For the accused very naturally denies, that he has sworn falsely by the royal hearth and then it is necessary to send for more prophets. If now these also say the same as the first ones did, then <sup>2</sup> it is clear to all, that the accused is guilty and his head is cut-off forthwith; but, if this is not the case, then the prophets who first gave an opinion, are themselves put to death in the following way. The attendants seizing them bind their hands behind their backs; they then place them upon wagons loaded with fagots, set fire to the wood and start off the oxen. The terrified animals rush along and do not escape, until the pole has been burnt through and they have themselves been well scorched. The false prophets are burnt up completely.

<sup>1</sup> tense (?)<sup>2</sup> ἤδη.

## LV. REGULUS.

The Carthaginians having suffered many disasters,<sup>1</sup> sent ambassadors to Rome to negotiate peace and an exchange of prisoners. The ambassadors accordingly sailed away, taking with them Regulus, the captive general of the Romans. When they had arrived at Rome, Regulus steadfastly advised the Senate not to exchange the prisoners, although he knew that he must needs return to Carthage for torture if the prisoners were not released. He advised the Senate thus, because he said he was not himself worth so much to the city, as to have so great a number of Carthaginian prisoners given up in return for himself only, and the other Romans, few in number, who had been taken prisoners.

The Senate, therefore, resolved not to accept the proposals of the ambassadors. As Regulus was on the point of departing from Rome, his wife and the senators tried to detain him, but before they could finish their entreaties, he exclaimed, 'I will return to Carthage, for I have sworn to do so.' Returning to Carthage, he was put to death with the greatest extremities of cruelty and torture.<sup>2</sup> This story is told by the Roman writers; if the Carthaginians had been the writers they would perhaps have told a different tale.

<sup>1</sup> express in verb: use ἀνυχίω.

<sup>2</sup> use βασανίζω and αἰκίζω.

## LVI. XERXES IN A STORM.

The following story is told about Xerxes : Having been away from home on one occasion there overtook the ship, as he was sailing back to Asia, a mighty wind and storm. The king in fear called out, and asked the helmsman how they could *come safe to land*.<sup>1</sup> As the helmsman hesitated to reply, Xerxes urged him to tell his views without fear, for he saw that he had some plan. Then the helmsman replied, ' Master, we cannot reach land in such a storm as this unless some of these passengers disembark, for they are many, and the boat is *ready*<sup>2</sup> to sink.' Thereupon, the nobles of the Persians who were standing by, made their salaam to Xerxes and leaped into the sea, and thus the ship was brought safe to land.

Now whether Xerxes commanded the Persians to do this or whether they did it of their own accord, I cannot say ; but even if they had not done so voluntarily, the king would have compelled them, or if they had all come safe to land he would have had them put to death. As it was,<sup>3</sup> the king upon disembarking presented the helmsman with a golden crown and then commanded that his head be cut off ; for he had destroyed many Persians.

This story is told about Xerxes.

<sup>1</sup> use ἀποσώζω.

<sup>2</sup> use μέλλω.

<sup>3</sup> how trans. ?

## LVII. CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS.

After Christopher Columbus had arrived at the island of Jamaica he came into great need of provisions, nor did he know <sup>1</sup> how he was to support his soldiers and save himself.

There was nothing to do, it seemed, but to commit himself and those with him to the savages on the island. Just in time, however, it occurred to him in his perplexity <sup>2</sup> that an eclipse of the moon was on the point of taking place. So then he did as follows. Sending for the savage chiefs he told them that if they did not do all things for him that he desired, they would certainly suffer the most terrible calamities. He added that he would make a beginning by stopping the moon from shining.

At first the savages laughed at these threats, but as soon as they saw that the moon was turning black, just as Columbus threatened, they were struck with terror, and before the eclipse was over fell at the commander's feet and offered him all that they possessed.

<sup>1</sup> turn in several ways, see Lex. under *ἄνωγμι* and cf. Hdt. ii. 181. *ἔστιν οὐδὲμία μηχανή*, etc.

<sup>2</sup> use *ἀπορία*.



## LVIII. THE ROYAL INVESTIGATOR.

A certain king of the Indians once contrived the following plan to discover what men were the most ancient upon earth. He gave two new-born infants of poor parents to a shepherd to rear, and charged him that no one should utter a syllable in their hearing, but that he should rear them on goat's milk in a deserted hut by themselves. The king did this, wishing to know what sort of a sound<sup>1</sup> the children would first utter.

Now the following circumstances occurred : For two years the children uttered no *articulate word*,<sup>1</sup> but one day, as the shepherd entered with the goat's milk, both the babies came running to him, tripping-up in their haste and crying, 'lacos ! lacos !' When the king heard this he sent men into all countries to inquire what people use the word 'lacos' and what is its meaning. Now the messengers went away in the early summer and did not return until late autumn. On their return they said : O king, far in the north, where men of these parts would be unable to dwell on account of the cold, there dwell certain dwarfish-men who use wagons without wheels and drawn along upon the snow by dogs. These men call milk 'lacos.' Consequently the king concluded that the men of the north are the most ancient of mankind.

The Greeks, however, say that the king handed over the children not to a shepherd but to some women whose<sup>2</sup> tongues he had first cut out. Whether this is so I know not, but the children's first word was, 'lacos.'

<sup>1</sup> use φωνή in each case.

<sup>2</sup> case ?

## LIX. MOUNT ATHOS IN 1889.

There is a mountain, lofty and peninsular, Mount Athos by name, inhabited by certain priests called monks, and if you shall go thither you will see many things worth seeing. Sacred books are to be found there in great numbers, which the monks have copied. Also, in addition to the three thousand monks themselves there are the same number of male servants, there are also billy-goats, roosters, and tom-cats in abundance. But if you should search from crow of cock till set of sun, you would find never a woman ; for there is no such thing there. A certain philologist, not the least esteemed among the Philhellenes of our time has published the *results of his personal investigation*,<sup>1</sup> writing as follows : ' When I say that butter was rare and eggs imported, I assume that the reader knows of *the great feature*<sup>2</sup> of Athos, which consists in the *absence*<sup>3</sup> of *the greatest feature*<sup>4</sup> of human life — woman, and all inferior imitations of her in the animal world. Not a cow, not a goat, not a hen, not a cat *of that sex* !<sup>5</sup> And this for centuries ! '

<sup>1</sup> use ἀπόδειξις and ἱστορία.

<sup>4</sup> τὸ μέγιστον.

<sup>2</sup> use ἐκεῖνος and sup. of θαυμάσιος.

<sup>5</sup> Give the sense without tr. this word.

<sup>3</sup> τὸ ἀπύειναι.

**LX. MOUNT ATHOS.** (*Continued.*)

Now if any one supposes that these men grow barbarous or savage, living there alone without womankind, he will miss the mark widely ; both the monks and their servants are hospitable and gracious, as the above mentioned writer affirms, and if differences arise amongst them they settle them sensibly in the court room by the help of lawyers. No strife of tongues is heard upon the island. But the learned writer is also compelled, through love of truth, to mention one drawback. Life in Athos is vacant and spiritless. Not alone the mules and the monks, but also the servants, both men and boys, are listless and dull. No games are played about the towns, and if the cocks crow at all their note seems like a wail not a challenge, and if you will look out of your window on a moon-lit night you will see the tom-cats walking along the roof in deep dejection — see them, I say, for they utter no sound. If the monks had not taken possession of Athos, all would have been different.

## LXI. A QUARREL IN CAMP.

Let none of you, judges, suppose that I have come here to accuse this Menon on account of any ordinary wrong ; for I have suffered such things that it makes me shudder even now to recall them. Last summer we went out on garrison duty to the Boeotian frontier, and, as it chanced, this Menon here tented near us : if this had not been the case, judges, never would it have happened to me to be insulted, maltreated, and finally almost killed in the following shameful fashion.

One day, as we were dining, we heard a tremendous noise, and peeping out of the tent we saw this Menon and *his crew*<sup>1</sup> beating our servants, alleging that the cooks smoked them out. We, as was natural, were very indignant, and bade them go away and stop playing their drunken tricks upon our servants.

But our saying this made matters so much the worse ; for, leaving the cooks, they attacked me and my messmates, and did not stop insulting us until they did such things as neither befitted me to tell nor you to hear. Now we at this time lodged no complaint against them, partly through fear of further trouble and partly because we knew that even if we should tell the general, who was an easy-going man, he would at the most rebuke them, but regard me as a troublesome soldier.

Do you<sup>2</sup> now read the sworn-testimony of all this ; and do you<sup>3</sup> stop the water.

<sup>1</sup> use of *ταυροῦ*.

<sup>2</sup> to the clerk.

<sup>3</sup> to the care-taker of the water-clock.

## LXII. ASSAULT AND BATTERY.

When the clerk had read the testimony, the plaintiff spoke as follows : One day last winter I supped at the house of Pandocus the fuller ; for a guest-friend of ours happened to be staying in town. So then as I was returning, when it was already growing dark, there jumped down upon me from a house-top in a narrow street this Menon and Phanos-thenes and several others. If they had not come upon me thus unawares<sup>1</sup> I might perhaps have resisted them or at least escaped ; as it was, this was out of the question,<sup>2</sup> for Xanthias my slave, who was carrying the torch, went off on a run, dropping his torch so that it was extinguished. Consequently they tripped me up, stripped off my clothes, and so treated me as to bung up my eyes and cut my lip. That which was the hardest to bear was that Menon crew like a victorious cock as he stood right on my stomach, and clapped against his sides with his arms instead of wings. They then went off with my cloak, which was almost new, while I was carried home half-dead, clad in my shirt only. For mother and our maid-servants, when Xanthias escaped to the house and told them, came running out with screams, and not until I had been carried to the (public) bath and shown to the doctor was I able to speak. And when the doctor had examined me, he exclaimed : ‘If you carry him home in this condition, he will die ; take him to a house near by and see to it *that*<sup>3</sup> you take good care of him.’

To prove now that I speak the truth-I will present to you the witnesses of this.

<sup>1</sup> translate by — ?      <sup>2</sup> turn freely.      <sup>3</sup> which construction ?

## LXIII. THE CROCODILE.

I will describe to you the nature of the crocodile. Sometimes you will see it in the river, sometimes on the land, for it is amphibious. It is especially fond of little Egyptians, and it eats them whenever it has the chance. Although it is a four-footed beast, it lays eggs and leaves them on the land. From these eggs, which are not much larger than goose-eggs, is hatched out the crocodile chick. This is very small in proportion to the egg. But it grows into a very large animal, so that it is sometimes seventeen cubits long, sometimes more. It has four short feet, but its tusks are long ; its eyes resemble those of a pig. Herodotus says that it is able to move the upper jaw only, and that it is blind in the water. It is also related that the crocodile, lying concealed, is accustomed to cry like a child to entice its victim to itself. Hence the expression ‘ crocodile-tears.’

## LXIV. THE SONG OF THE FATES.

Amongst many other things that the great poet of the Germans has written, he also describes the relentless gods of Greece in his 'Iphigenie auf Tauris.' He represents Iphigenia as telling how the old nurse sang to her and to her brother, when children, the 'Song of the Fates.'

'Well may the race of mortals fear the gods,' sang the old woman, 'for they hold the sovereignty in their eternal hands and can use it as it pleases them. Let him whosoever they raise to honor fear them doubly; for if ever a quarrel arises at their feasts they hurl their guests, be they Titans or mortals, down into Tartarus, where the poor wretches wait in vain for justice. Thus it was with Tantalus. But the gods are pleased as they perceive the savor of the burnt offerings whirling around in the smoke arising heavenward<sup>1</sup> either from the altars in Mycenae or in Argos, nor do they care at all for men toiling and suffering and offering sacrifice. For Zeus and the other gods feast on the golden floor and cease not till it pleaseth them; or, if so they will, stride along from peak to glistening peak of Olympus, careless of mankind.'

If you would know more of this, you must read the words of the poets themselves.

<sup>1</sup> cf. Il. I. 316.

## LXV. THE FATES.

The names of the Fates were Klotho, Lachesis, and Atropos. While Klotho spun for wretched man his thread of life, Lachesis determined its length, and then came Atropos with her resistless shears to cut the thread. Whenever Lucian, godless fellow that he is, begins to write about the gods, he does not stop until he has said many impious things about the inhabitants of Olympus. For in mocking at Homer and the other poets, he declares that Zeus has certain windows in the floor of heaven resembling the mouths of wells and furnished with covers, and that sitting down by each he takes off the cover and enjoys the savor and listens to the requests. Now each man asks for a different thing, as follows, — ‘O Zeus, make my onions grow and my garlic.’ And another: ‘May I but plot against my brother without his knowledge!’ And another: ‘Ye gods, may it be granted me to gain my lawsuit!’ And among those who are sailing one asks for the north-wind to blow and another for the south-wind, and the farmer asks for rain and the fuller for sun. And when Zeus has received the offerings he claps<sup>1</sup> the covers on again and does not grant their requests.

Lucian also says that if you could see as the gods do, you would see the Fates overhead spinning, and a thread descending from the spindles upon each man like spiders’ webs. And if you look closely you will see all hanging in the air ready to fall whenever the thread can hold out no longer against the weight.

<sup>1</sup> use κτυπέω.



## LXVI. THE PHOENIX.

There is in Egypt or somewhere in Arabia a wonderful bird called the Phoenix. Its picture I saw frequently in Suntown, but the bird I never saw. Now this is not to be wondered at, for the bird comes once only in five hundred years, and the last time it came to Suntown was about thirty-seven years before my visit. If what they say of him is true, he is of *the following size and description*.<sup>1</sup> Some of his feathers are golden and some red, in size and outline he resembles an eagle. What the bird does, however, is the most remarkable. He does not make his appearance until his father is dead, and he then comes to Suntown expressly to bury his dead parent in the temple of the Sun. He brings his father in an egg which he has moulded of myrrh. Now, as I said, I have never seen either the bird or the egg, but the people there affirm that he first makes the egg, and then, hollowing it out, puts in his father and plasters it up again ; he then brings the egg, father *and all*,<sup>2</sup> to the temple in Suntown.

<sup>1</sup> tr. : τοσοῦδε καὶ τοιόσδε.

<sup>2</sup> use of αὐτός ?

## LXVII. FARMERS IN COURT.

A certain farmer brought suit against another, alleging that the latter had walled-off a conduit and that when a storm occurred, the water poured in from the road and ruined his farm. But the defendant declared that it was not a conduit, but itself a plot of farm-land, and told the jury that if they would go there they would find that a road ran between the plaintiff's ground and his own, and he added : ' My father, a little while before I was born, walled up the land to keep out the water which used to overflow from the road. If the plaintiff now admits, as he does, that the property is mine and not public land, he cannot claim that it is a drain ; for, if you will visit the spot, you will see that there are fruit trees planted there, and, what is more, ancestors buried there, and yet who would ever think of doing that in a drain? What then was I to do? Was I to receive the water into my farm, and, *as soon as*<sup>1</sup> it had passed by the plaintiff's farm, lead it back to the road again? Surely that would be necessary unless I should let it go into the next neighbor's farm. The clerk will now read the testimony of my neighbors.'

<sup>1</sup> tr. : 'whenever.'

## LXVIII. SOCRATES IN PRISON.

All men have read of the trial and unjust condemnation of Socrates, and his disciples Xenophon and Plato have written much about what he said and did in the prison. For, though condemned to death, it was unlawful for him to be executed before the vessel returned which the Athenians send yearly to the god at Delos. He therefore remained a month in prison, refusing to attempt an escape, for, he said to his friends when they tried to persuade him, if I should do that I should be a breaker of the law. During this time, he taught his disciples about the immortality of the soul, persuading them that death is not the end of life, but a journey hence to another life where, as Pindar says,<sup>1</sup> the just receive a life without toil sunlit both by day and night. But Crito, his friend, weeping, thought only about death and asked him how they should bury him. Smiling on him, Socrates said that if they should catch him they might bury him in any way they pleased. Then he added that it was his corpse not himself that the attendants were going to lay-out and carry-out for burial when he was dead. Let no one, he went on to say, speak of me, Socrates, as buried here in Athens, but consider that I am gone far hence to the happiness of the blessed !

<sup>1</sup> Olymp. II. 61, ff.

LXIX. SOCRATES IN PRISON. (*Continued.*)

On one occasion also, when he noticed that the by-standers were weeping, he said, 'Now, what is this? Why do you weep? Do you not know that the *sentence of death was passed*<sup>1</sup> upon me by nature as soon as I was born?' But one of his friends, Apollodorus, who was present, replied, 'Yes, but, Socrates, I am grieved the most because I see you put to death unjustly.' The Master, stroking the young man's hair, replied with a laugh, 'Why, my dear Apollodorus, would you then prefer to see me put to death justly?' Thus bold was Socrates to meet death, not because he despised life, but because he knew that death was better than life. The last day in the prison his little children were brought to Socrates by the women of his household, who, as was natural, wept and bewailed him. He therefore, when he had arranged everything as seemed best, sent them away; 'For,' said he afterwards to his friends, when they also began to weep, 'I have heard that it is right to die in *holy-silence*.'<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> use θάνατος and καταψηφίζεσθαι.<sup>2</sup> tr.: εὐφημία.

## LXX. DEATH OF SOCRATES.

Now he, freshly bathed, came and sat down with his friends. Towards sunset the servitor of the Eleven came with the man who was to give the drug. But Crito, seeing that the sunlight still lingered on the mountains as though reluctant to deliver Socrates over to night and death, bade him wait yet a little. But Socrates interrupting him said, 'Not so, Crito, for it would be absurd to be thus eager to live.' When the man brought the drug he drank it off readily and calmly. 'If up to this time,' said Phaedo in relating the circumstance to Echecrates, 'we had after a fashion restrained our tears, now we could do so no longer, and we all wept except Socrates himself. But he reproached us and made us stop *for*<sup>1</sup> very shame. After this he walked around the room until his legs grew heavy and then he lay down on the couch. Then the attendant examined his condition by pinching his legs, and showed us that he was growing cold and stiff. Even now Socrates was calm and self-possessed, but he said that whenever it reached his heart it would *prove-fatal*.<sup>2</sup> Before the end came, uncovering his head, he said to Crito that he owed a cock to Aesculapius and bade him pay it and not neglect it. These the last words of Socrates caused us much discussion, but in case any one shall ask you what he meant by this you may answer that the 'master' wished to offer a thank-offering to Aesculapius because he had healed him of mortality.'<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *ὅτι* and gen.<sup>2</sup> give sense.<sup>3</sup> Articular inf. and *θυμὸς*.

# GENERAL VOCABULARY.

## ABBREVIATIONS, Etc.

S. V. = Special Vocabularies, pp. 93-101.

† prefixed to a word means that it cannot stand first in its clause.

✓ indicates derivation, or comparison with a word in English, etc.

acc. = accusative case.

adj. = adjective.

adv. = adverb.

aor. = aorist tense.

Att. = in Attic Greek.

c. = *cum*, with.

cf. = *confer*, compare.

comp. = comparative degree.

compd. = compound.

d. or dat. = dative case.

e. g. = *exempli gratia*.

f. = feminine.

g. or gen. = genitive case.

H. = Homer.

Hdt. = Herodotus.

intr. = intransitive.

m. = masculine.

N. T. = New Testament Greek.

n. = neuter.

nom. = nominative.

sb. = noun, substantive.

sup. = superlative degree.

trv. = transitive.

tr. = translate.

*vide* = see.

vb. = verb.

N. B. The uncontracted forms of contract verbs are given. The student must remember to contract in accordance with Attic usage.

## A

a, an : omit, or use *τις, τι*. § I.  
able, to be —: *δύναμαι. οἶός τέ (έστι).*

— (adj.): *δυνατός, ή, όν.*

about: (concerning), *περί*, gen.

— (around, near), *περί*, acc.

also of time; e. g. *περί μέσας νύκτας*, 'about midnight.'

— (nearly) (adv.), *μάλιστα*, with numerals, *ώς, εις*.

—, to be, *μέλλω*.

*αβονθ*: from —, *άνωθεν*.

above-mentioned: use *πρότερον* and *λέγω*.

—, to rule —, to be superior, use *κρείσσω*.

and — all: what is more: *καὶ δὴ καί.*

abroad: to go, to be —, *ἀποδημέω*.

absent: to be —, *ἀπείναι*.

absolutely: *παντάπασι, τὸ παράπαν, ἀτεχνῶς*.

absurd: *γελοῖος α, ον, or γέλοιος*.

abundance: in —, *ἄφθονος, ον, or use πλείστος, η, ον*.

accept: δέχομαι.  
 accomplishment: τὸ τέλος.  
 accord: of (one's) own —, αὐτόματος, η, ον, ἐθέλων, ἐκὼν, or use αὐτός.  
 accordance: in — with, *vide* 'by,' or use dat.  
 account: on — of, διά, acc.; ἕνεκα, gen.  
 accusation: guilt: cause: ἡ αἰτία.  
 accuse: αἰτιόμαι (aor. ἡτιάθην), κατηγορέω (ἄνδρ. περί τινος, or c. dupl. gen.).  
 accused: defendant: ὁ φεύγων, οντος.  
 accustomed: to be —, εἶθα (2 pf.); ἐθέλω.  
 Achilles: ὁ Ἀχιλλεύς.  
 acropolis: ἡ ἀκρόπολις.  
 actually: καί, καὶ δὴ καί.  
 add: to say in addition, προστίθηναι, ἔφη λέγων. or use γάρ or καὶ δὴ.  
 addition: in — to, πρὸς, dat.  
 address (vb): προσεῖπεν.  
 admit: assent: σύμφημι, ὁμολογέω, συγχωρέω.  
 advance: πρόειμι προβαίνω  
 advise: συμβουλεύω. πείθω (i. e. persuade).  
 Aeneas: ὁ Αἰνείας  
 Aesculapius: ὁ Ἀσκληπιός.  
 affair: matter: τὸ πρᾶγμα.  
 affirm: δῆσχυρίζομαι.  
 afford: occasion (vb.): παρέχω.  
 after (prep.): μετά, acc.; often participle. § 15.  
 — (an-interval-of), διά, gen.  
 — (later), (adv.), ὕστερον.

afterward: μετὰ ταῦτα. (secondly) ἔπειτα δέ.  
 again (see 'and'): πάλιν, αὖθις.  
 against: often dat. after verb, or παρά, πρὸς, ἐπὶ, acc.  
 Agamemnon: ὁ Ἀγαμέμνων.  
 air: (the lower air), ὁ αἶθρ. (the upper air) ὁ αἰθήρ.  
 Alexander, Paris: ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος.  
 alive: to be, *vide* 'live.'  
 all: πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν, ἅπας, etc.  
 at —, use τί. not at all, οὐδέν.  
 — sorts of, of — kinds, παντοίως, α, ον. (variegated), ποικίλος, η, ον.  
 allege: φάσκω.  
 allow: εἰάω, impers. ἐξείναι.  
 allowable: it is, ἐξεστι.  
 almost (adv.): σχεδόν, ὀλίγου δέιν.  
 alone (adj.): μόνος, η, ον. Exc. accent § 77 (Note α).  
 — (adv.), μόνον.  
 along: κατά, acc.: παρά, acc.  
 already: ἤδη.  
 also: καί.  
 altar: ὁ βωμός.  
 although: καίπερ c. partic., or partic. alone. § 15 (5).  
 am: εἰμί.  
 ambassadors: οἱ πρέσβεις.  
 Ambiorix: ὁ Ἀμβιόριξ.  
 among: amongst, ἐν, dat., παρά, dat.; sometimes appropriate case without prep.  
 amphibious: ἀμφίβιος, ον.  
 Anabasis: ascent, ἡ Ἀνάβασις.  
 ancestor: ὁ πρόγονος.  
 anchor: ἡ ἄγκυρα.

ancient: ἀρχαῖος, α, ον, παλαιός,  
ἀ, ὄν (accent § 77 (2)), or use  
'first.'

and: καί, † δέ, † τε.

— again: καὶ μὴν, καὶ μὴν καί.  
ἐπεῖτα δέ.

— also: and what is more, καὶ  
δὴ καί.

— not: οὐδέ.

— yet: καίτοι.

Andromache: ἡ Ἀνδρομάχη.

anger: ἡ ὀργή.

angry: to grow —, to be —, χα-  
λεπαίνω, ὀργίζομαι.

animal (wild beast): ὁ θήρ, θηρός,  
τὸ θηρίον.

— (living thing): τὸ ζῷον.

ankle: τὸ σφυρόν. (socket of  
joint). τὸ ἄρθρον.

announce: ἀγγέλλω, ἀπαγγέλλω,  
φημί.

annoy: grate upon, κνίζω (Hdt.  
and poet.).

another: other, ἄλλος, η, ον. (dif-  
ferent) ἀλλοῖος, α, ον.

answer: ἀποκρίνομαι.

ant ὁ μύρμηξ; ηκος.

any longer: use ἔτι.

ape: ὁ πίθηκος.

Aphrodite ἡ Ἀφροδίτη.

Apollodōrus ὁ Ἀπολλόδορος.

appear: show one's self, φαίνο-  
μαι (2 aor. pass. ἐφάνην).

appearance to make an —,  
ἐπιφαίνομαι.

appetite: desire, spirit, ὁ θυμός.

apply προσφέρω.

approach (vb.) *vide* 'come-up'  
or 'come toward'; (ascend),  
ἀναβαίνω.

approach (sb.): ἡ πρόσδοδος.

approve: ἐπαινέω. impers. (it  
seems good), δοκεῖ.

Arabia: ἡ Ἀραβία.

archer: ὁ τοξότης.

are-you-not? ἀρ' οὐ(κ) . . . ;

Argos: τὸ Ἄργος.

arise: occur, γίγνομαι, (go, *vide*  
'go' or 'come').

Aristarchus: ὁ Ἀρίσταρχος.

arithmetic: ἡ ἀριθμητική.

arm: *vide* S. V., No. 1.

in the — (bent or folded), ἐν  
ἀγκάλαις.

fore —, *vide* S. V., No. 1.

upper —, *vide* S. V., No. 1.

arms: armor, *vide* S. V., No. 6.

army: *vide* S. V., No. 6.

around (prep.): περί, acc.

— about, in a circle, κύκλῳ,  
ἐν κύκλῳ

arrange κοσμέω, διατίθημι. (dis-  
pose of), διατίθεμαι.

arrest: συλλαμβάνω.

arrive: ἀφικνέομαι.

arrow: ὁ οἰστός, τὸ τόξευμα.

Artaxerxes ὁ Ἀρταξέρξης.

artery: ἡ ἀρτηρία.

as (adv.): ὥς. (like as, just as),  
καθάπερ, or dat. simply.

— (conj.), ὥς, ἐπεὶ, etc.; *vide*  
§ 48.

— a-rule: ἐπίπαν, ὥς (τὸ) ἐπί-  
παν.

— if: — though, just as, ὥς-  
περ. (ironical), δήπου.

— it is: — it was, νῦν δέ.

— it were: ὥσπερ, ὥσπερ εἰ.

— large as: — much as, ὥσας,  
η, ον. ἥλικος, η, ον.



as soon as: — — — *εναν, ἐπει*  
or *ἐπειδὴ τάχιστα*.

Ascanius: *ὁ Ἀσκάνιος*.

ashamed: to be —, *αἰσχύνομαι*.

ashes: *ἡ σποδός*.

Asia: *ἡ Ἀσία*.

ask: (question), *ἐρωτάω* (use 2  
aor. *ἠρώμην*).

—, ask for, beg, *δέομαι, αἰτέω,*  
*ἄξιόω*. (pray for), *εὐχομαι*.

ass: *vide* S. V., No. 7.

assemble; (intr.), *συνλέγομαι* (2  
aor. pass. *συνελέγην*); *συνέρ-*  
*χομαι*.

assembly: *ἡ ἐκκλησία*.

assume: *ὑπολαμβάνω*

Assyrian: *Ἀσσύριος, α, ον*.

astronomy: *ἡ ἀστρονομία*.

at: (of place), (in), *ἐν*, dat., or  
loc. case; (opposite), *κατά*,  
acc.; (near), *πρός*, dat., or *vide*  
'by.'

— (of time), (toward or near),  
*πρός*, acc.

— this (point, or, at this time),  
*ἐν τούτῳ*.

Athenians: *οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι*.

Athens: *αἱ Ἀθῆναι*. at Athens,  
*Ἀθήνησιν*.

Athos: *ὁ Ἄθως* (acc. *ω* or *ων*).

Atropos: *ἡ Ἄτροπος* (*ἄ* and  
*τρέπω*).

attack (vb.): *ἐπιτίθεμαι*, c. dat.;  
*προσβάλλω* c. dat., or repeat  
prep.: *vide* § 65 (IV.).

— (sb.), *ἡ προσβολή*.

attempt: *πειράομαι, ἐπιχειρέω*.

attendant: *ὁ θεράπων, οντος*.

attention: to pay — to, *προσ-*  
*έχειν τὸν νοῦν* (πρός).

Attica: *ἡ Ἀττική*.

aunt: *vide* S. V. No. 2.

autumn: late autumn, *vide*  
S. V., No. 5.

avenger: *τιμωρέω* (dat of person  
avenged, acc. of person pun-  
ished, and gen. of crime).

away - from - home: to be —,  
*ἀποδημέω*.

awkward: clumsy, left-handed,  
*σκαῖός, ἄ, ὄν* (cf. *gauche*).

## B

baby: child: *τὸ παιδίον*. (new-  
born), *τὸ βρέφος* (poet.).

back: (sb.), *τὸ νῶτον*.

—: on the (adj.), *ὑπίτιος, α, ον*.

backward: *πάλιν* (also = again);  
back again, *ἀνάπαλιν*.

bad: *κακός, ἡ, ὄν*.

baggage: *vide* S. V., No. 6.

bald: *φαλακρός, ἄ, ὄν*.

ballot: pebble, *ἡ ψήφος*.

banquet: (dinner), *τὸ δεῖπνον*.  
(symposium), *τὸ συμπόσιον*.

*δαίς, δαιτός* (H.).

barbarous: barbarian (i. e. not  
Greek), *βάρβαρος, ον*. Accent  
§ 78 (3).

bath: (bathing-place), *τὸ βαλα-*  
*νεῖον*.

bathe: *λούομαι*.

battle: *ἡ μάχη*.

be: *εἶναι, γίγνομαι*, often *έχω* and  
adv.

beam: (of wood), *ἡ δοκός* (ac-  
cent § 74 (1)), *τὸ ξύλον*.

bear: (vb.), *φέρω* (*ἄ* *φέρω*).

long, *φέρω*.

(.), *ἡ ἄρκτος*.

*vide* S. V., No. 1.

*τὸ θηρίον*.

burden: *τὸ ὑποζύγιον*.

trike): *τύπτω, παίω*. (con-), *νικάω*.

e: *δίωτι, ὅτι, ἐπεί, ἐπειδή*.

*Vide* § 48.

z: *γίγνομαι*.

ag or queen, *ἐβασίλευσα*. § 24.

*ide* S. V., No. 3.

*μέλιττα*.

ix: *ὁ κηρός*.

npers.): it befits, *πρέπει*.

(prep.): *πρός*, gen.; *πρό-* gen.; (beside), *παρά*,

*οaths*), *πρός*, gen.

(v.), *πρόσθεν*.

j.), *πρότερος*, a, *ον*.

onj.), before that, *πρίν*, § 51 (c).

: *δέομαι, αἰτέω*.

*ἄρχω*, or express by im- tense.

ing: *ἡ ἀρχή*.

(adv.): *κατόπιν, ὀπισθεν*,

u.

: *καθοράω, θεάομαι*.

: *πιστεύω, πείθομαι*.

*vide* S. V., No. 1.

under (adv.), *κάτω*.

*ἐπικάμπτω*.

ix: *ἐπικύπτω*.

: *παρά*, dat. (= rest); *παρά*, (= motion).

n: *μεταξύ*, gen., or use

bewail: *ὀδύρομαι*.

bid (order): *κελεύω*.

— (invite): *καλέω* (1 aor. pass. *ἐκλήθην*).

bind: *δέω* (fut. *δήσω*).

— around: *περιδέω*.

— together: *συνδέω*.

biologists: natural philoso- phers: *οἱ φυσικοί*.

bird: chicken: fowl: *ὁ (ἡ) ὄρνις, ὄρνιθος*.

black: to turn, *μελαίνομαι* (aor. *ἐμελάνθην*).

blanket: coarse cloak, *ὁ τρίβων, ὠνος*.

blaze-up: *ἀναλάμπω*.

blessed, the: the happy dead, *οἱ μάκαρες* (*vide* 'blissful').

blind (vb.): *τυφλόω*.

— (adj.): *τυφλός, ἡ, ὄν*.

blissful: *εὐδαίμων, ὦν; ὁ, ἡ, τὸ μάκαρ, μάκαρος*.

blood: *vide* S. V. No. 1.

blow (upon): *ἐπιπνέω*.

boar: *ὁ κάπρος, ὁ ὄς, ὄός*.

boat: *τὸ πλοῖον*. (ship), *ἡ ναῦς*. (light-boat), *ἡ ἄκατος*.

body: *τὸ σῶμα*.

Boeotia: *ἡ Βοιωτία*.

bold: *ἄντρεμής, ἐς*.

bone: *vide* S. V., No. 1.

book: *ἡ βιβλος*. (volume), *τὸ βιβλίον*, or *ὁ λόγος*.

born: to be —, *γίγνομαι*.

borrow: [*κίχραμαι*], aor. *ἐχρησά- μην*. (on usury), *δανείζομαι*.

bosom: fold of a garment: bay: *ὁ κόλπος*.

both (adj.): *ἄμφω, ἀμφότερος, α, ὦν*.

both . . . and, *καί* . . . *καί*,<sup>†</sup> or  
† *τε* . . . *καί*.

bow : *vide* S. V. No. 6.

bowman : archer, *vide* S. V.,  
No. 6.

box-and-wrestle : *παγκρατιάζω*.

boy : child, *δ παῖς*, *παιδός*.

bravely : manfully, *ἀνδρικῶς*.

bread (wheat-loaf) : *δ ἄρτος*.

break-the-law : *παρανομέω*.

breakfast (vb.) : *ἀριστάω*.

— (sb.) : luncheon : *τὸ ἄριστον*.

brick : *ἡ πλίνθος*.

bridge (vb.) : *γεφυρόω*.

— (sb.) : *ἡ γέφυρα*.

bring (bear) : *φέρω*. (take), *λαμβάνω*. (bring safe, carry off),  
*κομίζω*.

— aid : *βοηθέω*, *παραβοηθέω*.

— forth : *τίκτω*.

— forward, against, upon, *ἐπι-*  
*φέρω*.

— (lead) : *ἄγω*, *ἀνάγω*, *ἐπάγω*.

— toward or down : *προσάγω*.

— up : educate : *τρέφω* (2 aor.  
pass. *ἐτρέφην*).

bring suit (private suit) : insti-  
tute proceedings, *λαγχάνω*  
*δίκτην*.

brooch : *ἡ πόρπη*, *ἡ περόνη*.

brother : *δ ἀδελφός*.

bulge : or wave out, *ἐκκυμαίνω*.

bung up : shut close, *συγκλείω*.

burial : tomb, *δ τάφος*.

burn : *καίω*, *κατακαίω*.

— or scorch around, *περικαίω*.

— up, burn through, *κατακαίω*.

— up with, *συγκατακαίω*.

**burrow** : lurk in a den, *φω-*  
*λεύω*.

burst forth : *ρήγνυμι*  
pass. *ἐρράγην*).

bury : *θάπτω*, *κατορύσσω*.

but : (conj.)† *δέ*, *ἀλλά*.

— (adv.), *vide* 'only  
times omit.

butcher : (also *cook*), *δ*

butter : *τὸ βούτυρον*.

buy : *ώνέομαι*, aor. *έπρι*

by : (agent), *ὑπό*, gen.  
alone; sometimes *ἐκ*

— (according to), *κατ*

— (alongside, near), *ι*  
(rest); *παρά*, acc. (*π*

by means of : *διά*, acc  
alone.

— (during), gen. ; *ε* ;  
'by day.'

— (in oaths), *μά* ('by  
by . . .') ; *νή* ('yes,

acc. ; *πρός*, gen.  
— one's self : *ἐφ' ἐα*

*αυτόν*.

by-standers : *οἱ παρόντι*

by this time : already,

## C

call : (summon), *καλέω*

— (name or address

*ὀνομάζω*, *προσείπον*.

— out : *ἀναβοάω*.

— (an assembly), *σὺλ*  
*καλέω*, *ποιέω*.

calm : fearless, *ἀτρεμής*  
calmly : *εὐκόλως*.

camp : *vide* S. V., No.

can : be able, *δύναμαι*  
cannot, often use *οὐ*

ul city : ἡ μητρόπολις (genl.  
: mother city').  
in : *vide* S. V., No. 6.  
re : *vide* 'prisoner.'  
re : catch, λαμβάνω, αἰρέω  
ι ἀλίσκομαι as pass.  
for : κήδομαι, gen.; ἐπιμε-  
ναι, gen.; φροντίζω, gen.  
ul : ἐπιμελής, ἐς.  
ully : ἐπιμελῶς, ἐπιμελεία.  
ss : ἀμελής, ἐς, gen., or use  
λέω.  
: bear, φέρω. (lead), ἄγω.  
ome, off, away, ἀποφέρομαι,  
κομίζω, ἐκφέρω.  
f (i. e. plunder), ἀρπάζω.  
it (for burial), ἐκφέρω.  
ound, περιφέρω.  
to, εἰσφέρω.  
age : ἡ Καρχηδών, ονος.  
aginian : Καρχηδόνιος, α, ον.  
to be the : use εἶναι, γίγνε-  
: or ἔχειν with adv., e. g.  
οὕτως.  
ndra : ἡ Κασσάνδρα.  
*vide* S. V., No. 7; ὁ (ἡ)  
υρος.  
: λαμβάνω.  
, offer : παρέχω.  
ry : *vide* S. V., No. 6.  
τὸ ἄντρον.  
: *vide* 'stop.'  
ε : *vide* 'middle.'  
ry : ἡ ἑκατονταετηρίς, ἰδος.  
sorus : ἡ Κερκάσωρος.  
n : (some one), τῖς, τὴ.  
sure), ἀσφαλής, ἐς.  
nty : τὸ ἀσφαλές. with —  
learnness, σαφῶς.  
: *vide* 'fetter.'

chair : *vide* S. V., No. 3.  
challenge (vb.) : προσκαλέομαι.  
— (sb.) : ἡ πρόκλησις.  
chance : to have a —, (impers.),  
παρεῖναι.  
—, fortune, ἡ τύχη.  
chanced, it : use τυγχάνω. *Vide*  
§ 17.  
change : metamorphose (vb.) :  
μεταβάλλω, μεταμορφόω (rare  
in active).  
— over into (intr.), μεταβαίνω  
eis . . .  
channel : ὁ αὐλὼν, ὠνος.  
charge : accuse : κατηγορέω, dupl.  
gen. or τί τινος.  
— : enjoin : ἐντέλλομαι (τινὶ τι).  
— : run : θέω, ἐπιτρέχω.  
chariot : τὸ ἄρμα  
charioteer : ὁ τροχηλάτης (poet.),  
√ τροχός, 'wheel,' and εἰλύνω.  
cheap : ἄξιος, α, ον (also = dear,  
lit. 'worth so much').  
cheerfully : θαρῶς.  
cheer up (intr.) : θαρρέω.  
Cheops : ὁ Χέοψ, οπος  
chest : breast : *vide* S. V., No. 1.  
chick : nestling : young from  
egg : ὁ νεοσσός.  
chicken : *vide* 'bird.'  
chief : ὁ ἄρχων, οντος.  
child : ὁ παῖς, τὸ παιδίον, τὸ τέ-  
κνον.  
choose : ἐπιλέγομαι. (take for  
one's self. αἰρέομαι).  
Christ : ὁ ΧΡΙΣΤΟΣ.  
Christopher : ὁ Χριστοφόρος.  
For accent see § 78 (1).  
circumstances : omit, or use  
ταῦτα, or τὰ πράγματα.

Cithaeron : ὁ Κιθαίων, ὄνος.  
 city : ἡ πόλις.  
 clad lightly : half naked : in  
 tunic only : γυμνός, ἡ, ὄν.  
 claim (as a right) : urge : ἀξιώω.  
 clap against : smite : κροτέω.  
 clap on : shut up : ἐπιτίθημι.  
 claw : hoof : finger nail : ὁ ὄνυξ,  
 υχος.  
 clear : δηλος, η, ον.  
 Clearchus : ὁ Κλέαρχος.  
 clerk : ὁ γραμματεὺς.  
 cliff : rock, ἡ πέτρα.  
 climb up : ascend, ἀναβαίνω.  
 go up to, προσβαίνω.  
 cloak : τὸ ἱμάτιον.  
 close-fitting : σύμμετρος, ον.  
 clothes, ἡ ἐσθῆς, ἦτος, τὰ ἱμάτια.  
 cloud : *vide* S. V., No. 4.  
 clown : jester, ὁ γελωτοποιός.  
 Cnaeus : ὁ Γνάϊος.  
 cock : rooster, ὁ ἀλεκτρυνών, ὄνος.  
 — crow : ἡ ἀλεκτροφωγία (Ae-  
 sop., Luc.).  
 cold : *vide* 'winter,' τὸ ψῦχος.  
 color : complexion : skin : ἡ  
 χροιά, χροά, τὸ χρώμα.  
 colts ; drawn by, πωλικός, ἡ, ὄν.  
 Columbus : ὁ Κόλομβος.  
 come : ἦκω, ἔρχομαι, ἀφικνεόμαι.  
 — repeatedly, ἐπιφουτάω, φοι-  
 τάω.  
 — = become : γίγνομαι.  
 —, to be, ἦκω.  
 — ! (exclamation), φέρε. come  
 then ! ἄγε δή. come now,  
 φέρε δή.  
 — back again, ἐπανέρχομαι,  
 ἦκω.  
 — on, ἐπέρχομαι.

come forth, advance, χωρέω.  
 προσέρχομαι.  
 — in or to, εἰσέρχομαι, παρέρχο-  
 μαι.  
 — into being, to arise, γίγνομαι.  
 — into such and such a con-  
 dition, use intr. tenses of κα-  
 θίστημι.  
 — upon or on, ἐπιγίγνομαι, παρί-  
 στημι.  
 comely : shapely, εὐειδής, ἐς.  
 command : (order), κελεύω.  
 (lead), ἡγέομαι, ἄρχω.  
 commander : *vide* S. V., No. 6.  
 commend : ἐπαινέω.  
 commit : hand over, παραδίδωμι.  
 common : in common, κοινός,  
 ἡ, ὄν.  
 communicate : converse with,  
 διαλέγομαι.  
 companion : ὁ ἐταῖρος, or *vide*  
 'guest.'  
 company : the, tr. 'those pres-  
 ent.'  
 compel : ἀναγκάζω or compds. ;  
 βιάζομαι, mid. dep., or use  
 ἀνάγκη.  
 complainant : ὁ κατηγορός, ὁ δι-  
 ὠκων.  
 completely : *vide* 'all,' or adv.  
 παντελῶς.  
 comrade : equal in age, ὁ ἡλι-  
 κιώτης, or *vide* 'companion.'  
 conceal : κρύπτω.  
 concealed : to lie, κρύπτομαι.  
 concerned in : μεταίτιος, (α), ον,  
 gen.  
 concerning : περί, gen.  
 conclude : συμβάλλω.  
 concoot : συγκροτίω.

condemn : κατακρίνω.  
 condemnation : ἡ κατάγνωσις.  
 condition : to be in —, use ἔχω  
 or διάκειμαι and adv.  
 — : nature : ἡ φύσις.  
 conduct (vb.) : *vide* 'lead.'  
 — (sb.), use article and ptc. of  
 ποιέω.  
 conduit : drain : ravine : ἡ χα-  
 ράδρα.  
 conference : to have a, talk,  
 ἵεναι εἰς λόγους.  
 confess : ὁμολογέω.  
 confusion : ὁ θόρυβος.  
 conjecture : εἰκάω.  
 conquer : νικάω.  
 consequently : therefore : ὥστε.  
 consider : *vide* 'think' or σκο-  
 πέω.  
 conspicuous : ἐπίσημος, ον.  
 construct : *vide* 'make.'  
 continue (being or doing) : δια-  
 τελέω with participle; *vide*  
 § 17.  
 contrive : μηχανάομαι.  
 converse : διαλέγομαι.  
 cook : ὁ μάγειρος. (fancy, of  
 relishes), ὁ ὀψοποιός.  
 coppersmith : ὁ χαλκεύς.  
 copy (of book, etc.) : τὸ ἀντί-  
 γραφον.  
 Corinth, of : Corinthian : Κορίν-  
 θιος, α, ον.  
 corpse : ὁ νεκρός, ὁ ἀποθανών.  
 Cotta : ὁ Κόττας.  
 couch : ἡ κλίνη.  
 could : opt. mood and ἄν, or see  
 'can.'  
 count : number : ἀριθμέω.  
 countenance : τὸ πρόσωπον.

country : ἡ χώρα, ἡ γῆ. native  
 —, πατρίς, ἰδος.  
 from what —? whence? πο-  
 διός; ἡ; ὄν;  
 court (of justice) : τὸ δικαστήριον.  
 — (of king) : αἱ (τοῦ) βασιλείως  
 θύραι. at court, παρὰ βασιλεῖ.  
 cousin : *vide* S. V., No. 2.  
 cover up : ἐγκαλύπτομαι  
 cover, lid (sb.) : τὸ πῶμα.  
 cow : ἡ βοῦς.  
 cowardice : ἡ κακία, ἡ ἀνανδρία.  
 crescent : 'moon-shaped' : μη-  
 νοειδής, ἑς.  
 Cretan : Κρητικός, ἡ, ὄν.  
 Creüsa : ἡ Κρέουσα.  
 Crito : ὁ Κρίτων, ωνος.  
 crocodile : ὁ κροκόδειλος.  
 cross (vb.) : διαβαίνω.  
 crossing : ἡ διάβασις.  
 Crotona : ἡ Κρότων, ωνος.  
 crow : sing : ᾄδω.  
 crowds, in : ἀθρόος, α, ον.  
 crown : chaplet : ὁ στέφανος.  
 — of head : ἡ κορυφή.  
 cruel : ὁμός, ἡ, ὄν.  
 cry like a child : to bleat : βλη-  
 χάομαι.  
 cry out : φωνέω, κέκραγα (2 pf.  
 as pres.).  
 cubit : fore-arm : ὁ πήχυς, εως.  
 cuirass : *vide* S. V., No. 6.  
 cultivate : farm : γεωργέω.  
 cup : ἡ κύλιξ, ικος.  
 cure : heal : ἰάομαι.  
 cut : τέμνω. strike, κόπτω.  
 — into or upon : ἐπιτέμνω.  
 — off : ἀποτέμνω.  
 — out : ἐκτέμνω.  
 — through : διακόπτω, διατέμνω

Cyclops : ὁ Κύκλωψ, *ωπος*.

cymbal : τὸ κύμβαλον.

—, to play the —s : κυμβαλίζω.

Cynic (adj.) : Κυνικός, ἡ, *όν*  
(√ κύων, 'dog').

Cyrus : ὁ Κῦρος.

## D

dance : ὀρχέομαι.

dancer : use ptc. of 'dance.'

danger : ὁ κίνδυνος. without —,  
ἀκίνδυνος, *ον*.

dangerous : difficult : χαλεπός,  
ἡ, *όν*.

Darius : ὁ Δαρείος.

dark : darkness : ὁ σκότος, *or*  
use ἡ νύξ.

— (adj.), σκοτεινός, ἡ, *όν*.

darning-needle : ἡ ἀκίστρα (late).

daughter : *vide* S. V., No. 2.

dawn : *vide* S. V., No. 4.

day : ἡ ἡμέρα. by day, ἡμέρας.  
at daybreak, ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ.

dead (adj.) : νεκρός, *ά, όν, αποθα-*  
*νών. τεθνηκώς, or vide 'corpse.'*

—, to be : *vide* 'die.'

death : ὁ θάνατος.

—, to put to : ἀποκτείνω. to be

— — —, ἀποθνήσκω.

decad : decade : ἡ δεκάς, *άδος*.

declare : *vide* 'say,' or διῶσχυρίζομαι.

decree : decide : κρίνω.

deep : βαθύς, *εία, ύ.*

defeated, to be : ἡττάομαι.

defendant : ὁ φεύγων.

dejection : ἡ ἀθυμία.

delicious : sweet : ἡδύς. *εία, ύ.*

deliver over : παραδίδωμι.

Dēlos : ἡ Δήλος.

Delta : τὸ Δέλτα.

Democēdes : ὁ Δημοκῆδης, *ους*.

Demosthenes : ὁ Δημοσθένης, *ους*

deny : ἀρνέομαι, *οὔ φημι*.

depart : *vide* 'go away.'

deprive : ἀποστερέω.

depth : τὸ βάθος.

descend : *vide* 'go down.'

descent : ἡ κατάβασις.

describe : *vide* 'tell.'

deserted (adj.) : ἐρήμος, (*η*), *ον*.

desire : *vide* 'wish.' (demand)  
*αἰτέω*.

despise : καταφρονέω, *gen*.

destroy : lose : ἀπόλλυμι. Mid.  
voice and 2 pf. act. = 'perish.'

detain : κατέχω.

determination : ἡ γνώμη.

determine (i. e. obtain by lot) :  
*λαγχάνω*.

devour : κατεσθίω.

dew : ἡ δρόσος.

dialect : *vide* 'voice, speech.'

Didymus : ὁ Δίδυμος, √ δύο. Ac-  
cent, *vide* § 78, 3.

die : ἀποθνήσκω, (euphem.) τε-  
λευτάω, *οἴχομαι*.

different : ἄλλοιος, *α, ον, διάφορος,*  
*ον*. Accent, § 78, 2.

differently : διαφερόντως.

difference : disagreement : τὸ  
διάφορον.

difficult : χαλεπός, ἡ, *όν*.

difficult of access : δυσπρόσodos.  
*ον*.

difficulty, with : μόλις.

dig : dig up : ὀρύσσω.

— through (a wall) : διορύσσω,  
τοιχωρυχέω.

δειπνέω.  
 ε : τὸ δεῖπνον.  
 le : ὁ μαθητής. √μανθάνω.  
 urse : use λόγος.  
 ver : *vide* 'find out.'  
 ssion : dispute : ἡ ἀμφισ-  
 ρισις.  
 bark : ἀποβαίνω, ἐκβαίνω.  
 oe, in the : afar off : πόρ-  
 εν.  
 : ἡ τάφος.  
 : trv., αἰρέω, διαιρέω.  
 ntr., σχίζομαι.  
 : θεῖος, α, ον.  
 ράσσω (make), ποιέω. do  
 ervice) for, ὑπηρετέω. In  
 s. often use γίγνομαι.  
 r : physician : ὁ ἰατρός.  
 ὁ (ἡ) κύων, κυνός. lap-dog,  
 νιδιον.  
 ἡ θύρα.  
 ε : διπλοῦς, ἦ, οὖν. — the  
 or number, διπλάσιος α,  
 ma (19 cents) : ἡ δραχμή.  
 off : *vide* 'pull.'  
 : drag : draw up : ἔλκω.  
 rack : need : ἡ ἔνδεια.  
 : outer cloak : τὸ ἱμάτιον.  
 ment), ἡ στολή.  
 : πίνω. drink off, ἐκπίνω.  
 e's fill : to go on drinking,  
 τίνω (sc. εἰς τὸν κόρον).  
 : march : ἐλαύνω, ἡμιοχέ-  
 α, 'reins,' and ἔχω).  
 let go : ἀφίημι. μεθίημι.  
 τὸ φάρμακον.  
 : μεθύων, ουσα, ον.  
 adj.) : ξηρός. ἡ ὄν. dry  
 and, τὸ ξηρόν, ἡ ξηρά.

dull (blunt) : ἀμβλύς, εἰα, ὕ.  
 cheerless, ἀτερπής, ἐς.  
 dumb (deaf and dumb) : κωφός,  
 ἡ, ὄν.  
 during (time how long) : acc.  
 case.; διά, gen.; κατά, acc.;  
 time in which, ἐν, dat., or use  
 gen. abs.  
 dwarf : ὁ ἀνθρωπίσκος. Accent,  
 § 74, 5.  
 dwell : dwell in : οἰκέω, ἐνοικέω,  
 κατοικέω.  
 dwelling : house : ἡ οἰκία, ὁ οἶ-  
 κος.

## E

each : ἕκαστος, η, ον. — of two,  
 ἑκάτερος, α, ον.  
 — other : gen. ἀλλήλων, or use  
 reflex. pronouns.  
 eager (adj.) : πρόθυμος, ον.  
 eagle : *vide* S. V., No. 8.  
 ear : τὸ οὖς, ὠτός.  
 earth : ἡ γῆ.  
 easily : εὐπετῶς.  
 east : ἡ ἕως.  
 easy-going : ῥάθυμος, ον (√ ῥάδιος  
 and θυμός).  
 eat : ἐσθίω.  
 — up : κατεσθίω.  
 Echecrates : ὁ Ἐχεκράτης, ους.  
 eclipse : ἡ ἔκλειψις.  
 —, to suffer : ἐκλείπω.  
 educate : παιδεύω.  
 egg : τὸ ᾠόν (or ὠόν).  
 Egypt : ἡ Αἴγυπτος.  
 Egyptian : Αἰγύπτιος, α, ον.  
 —, to speak : Αἰγυπτιάζω.



**eighth** : ὀγδοός, η, ον.  
**eightieth** : ὀγδοηκοστός, ή, όν.  
**either . . . or** : ή . . . ή.  
**elbow** : ὁ ἄγκών, ώνος.  
**elder** : eldest : πρεσβύτερος, πρε-  
 σβύτατος.  
**elephant** : ὁ ἐλέφας, αντος.  
**Eleven, the** : οἱ ἑνδεκα.  
**else** : if not : otherwise : εἰ δέ  
 μή, ἄλλως.  
 -- : other : ἄλλος, η, ον.  
**embalm** : pickle : ταριχεύω.  
**enclosure** : τὸ ἔρκος.  
**end (termination)** : ή τελευτή  
 (consummation), τὸ τέλος.  
 — of : top of : ἄκρος, α, ον.  
**Endymion** : ὁ Ἐνδυμίων, ωνος.  
**enemy (hostes)** : οἱ πολέμιοι. (in-  
 imicus), ὁ ἐχθρός.  
**enjoy** : ἀπολαύω, c. gen.  
**enough** : sufficiently (adv.) :  
 ἱκανώς  
**enter** : vide 'go in.'  
**entice** : ἐφέλκομαι, δελεάζω (allure  
 by bait).  
**entrails** : vide S. V., No. 1.  
**entreat** : beg : δέομαι, c. gen. pers.  
**entrust** : παραδίδομαι.  
**enumerate** : καταριθμέομαι.  
**equal** : ἴσος, η, ον.  
**equip** : furnish : κατασκευάζω.  
**escape** : ἀποφεύγω, ἀποδιδράσκω.  
 — the notice of : λανθάνω.  
**especially** : μάλιστα.  
**esteem (vb.)** : τιμάω, εὐδοκιμέω.  
 — (sb.) : ή ή τιμή.  
**esteemed** : approved : δόκιμος,  
 η, ον (Hdt. and poet.).  
**eternal** : use phrase εἰς αἰεί =  
 'for ever.'

**even (adv.)** : καί. not even, οὐδέ.  
**evening** : ή ἑσπέρα.  
**evil** : κακός, ή, όν.  
**examine** : ἐπισκοπέω. **make ex-**  
**amination, test**, ἐξετάζω.  
**exceedingly** : ἰσχυρῶς.  
**except** : πλήν, c. gen.  
**exchange** : ή ἀλλαγή.  
**exclaim** : φημί, εἶπον cry out,  
 βοάω.  
**execute** : vide 'put to death.'  
**expected, it is** : χροή, ἐχρῆν (ac-  
 cent N. B.). it is the custom,  
 ὁ νόμος ἐστίν.  
**expedition, to make an** : στρα-  
 τεύομαι.  
**experienced** : ἔμπειρος, ον. σο-  
 φός ή, όν.  
**expose** : ἐκτίθωμι.  
**expression, the** : prefix neut ar-  
 ticle to words quoted; cf. § 8.  
**expressly** : ἀπλῶς (Lat. *simplici-*  
*citer*).  
**extinguish** : σβέννυμι.  
**eye** : ὁ ὀφθαλμός.  
**eyebrow** : ή ὀφρὺς, ύος.

## F

**face** : vide S. V., No. 1.  
**fagot** : τὸ φρύγανον.  
**fail** : (Epic) δεύομαι, (Attic) δέ-  
 ομαι.  
**faith** : vide 'pledge.'  
**fall** : πίπτω. **fall into**, καταπίπτω  
 εἰς.  
 — in, — together : συμπίπτω.  
 — upon, at, before : προσπίπτω,  
 dat., or πρὸς, acc.

fall from : ἐκπίπτω.  
 far (adv.) : πόρρω.  
 fare (on ferry boat) : τὸ ναῦλον.  
 — (vb.), to — so and so, πά-  
 σχειν ταῦτα or πράσσειν (οὕτως,  
 εὖ, κακῶς, etc.).  
 farm : τὸ χωρίον.  
 farmer : ὁ γεωργός.  
 fashion : manner : ὁ τρόπος  
 (√τρέπω). Accent, § 74.  
 fasten : προσαρτάω.  
 fatal : use οἰχόμεαι or τελευτάω.  
 fated, it is : χρεών (έστι).  
 Fates, the : αἱ Μοῖραι.  
 father : ὁ πατήρ.  
 fathom : ἡ ὀργυία (√ὀρέγω), also  
 ὀργυια.  
 fear (vb.) : φοβέομαι, δέδοικα.  
 without — : ἀδεῶς.  
 fearful : φοβερός, ἄ, ὄν.  
 feast : ἐστιάω (act. = 'enter-  
 tain'); ἐστιάομαι (dep. = 'to be  
 entertained'); to dine, δειπνέω.  
 feather : τὸ πτερόν.  
 feel : perceive : αἰσθάνομαι.  
 fellow : τις, ὁ ἄνθρωπος. com-  
 panion, ὁ ἐταῖρος.  
 — banqueters : *vide* 'guest.'  
 female : θήλυς, εἰα, υ.  
 ferry-man : ὁ πορθμεύς.  
 fetch a blow : come down on :  
 καθικνέομαι.  
 fetter (vb.) : δέω, δήσω, πηδάω  
 (poet.).  
 — (sb.), ἡ πέδη (use pl.).  
 few : ὀλίγος η, ον (accent, exc.  
 § 77, Notes).  
 fifty : πενήκοντα.  
 —, a company of — men :  
 ἡ πεντηκοστής, ὕος.

fig : τὸ σῦκον.  
 fight (vb) : μάχομαι, dat., or  
 πρὸς, acc.  
 fighting, capable of : μάχιμος,  
 η, ον.  
 file : ἡ ῥίνη.  
 fill : πίμπλημι, πληρῶω.  
 — full : ἀναπίμπλημι.  
 finally (adv.) : τὸ τέλος. Often  
 use ptc. τελευτῶν.  
 find : εὑρίσκω. come upon, over-  
 take, καταλαμβάνω.  
 — out : ἀνευρίσκω.  
 finger : *vide* S. V., No. 1.  
 fire : τὸ πῦρ. conflagration, ἡ  
 ἔμπρησις, ἡ πυρκαϊά.  
 first (adj.) : πρῶτος, η, ον.  
 —, at first (adv.) : πρῶτον, τὸ  
 πρῶτον.  
 —, before, sooner : πρότερον.  
 in — place : use † μέν. e. g.  
 τὸ μέν or τοῦτο μέν, cf. § 2.  
 fish : ὁ ἰχθύς, ὕος.  
 five : πέντε.  
 five hundred : πεντηκῆσιοι, αι, α.  
 flat : broad : πλατύς, εἰα, ύ.  
 — on one's back, reclining :  
 ὕπιος, α, ον.  
 flee : φεύγω. escape, ἀποφεύγω.  
 flesh : *vide* S. V., No. 1. meat,  
 τὸ κρέας, κρέως  
 fight : *vide* S. V., No. 6.  
 fling : hurl : ῥίπτω.  
 fling down on top : ἐπικαταρριπτέω.  
 floods, in (adv.) : ἀστακτί (i. e.  
 'not in drops'; √σταγών = 'a  
 drop').  
 floor : τὸ δάπεδον (H. and poet.).  
 flow : ῥέω.  
 — around about : περιρρέω.

follow : accompany : *ἕπομαι*,  
dat. or prep.

— after or with : *συνέπομαι*.

following, the : *ὅδε, ἧδε, τόδε*.

— size : so big : *τοσούδε, ἧδε, ὄνδε*.

— description : of such kind :  
*τοιούσδε, ἄδε, ὄνδε*. Cf. *τοιάδε*,  
'as follows'; *τοιαῦτα*, 'as afore-  
said.'

fond of, to be : *φιλέω*.

foot : *ὁ ποῦς, ποδός*.

for (conj.) : † *γάρ*.

— (prep.) : (express. interest,  
benefit of), use dat. alone.

— sake of : *ἔνεκα*, gen.; *διά*,  
acc.; *ὑπέρ*, gen.

— (time how long) : accus.  
alone, or *διά* c. gen.

— (price) : gen. alone.

force : troops : *vide* S. V., No. 6.

force an entrance : *εἰσβάλλω*  
*βίᾳ*.

forehead : *τὸ μέτωπον*.

forget : *ἐπιλανθάνομαι*, aor. *ἐπε-*  
*λαθόμεν*.

form (vb.) : *vide* 'make.'

forsooth : † *δῆ, δῆθεν, δῆπου*.

forthwith (adv.) : *εὐθύς, αὐτίκα*.

four : *τέσσαρες*, a.

— footed : *τετράπους, ουν* (Lat.  
*quadrupes*).

— hundredth : *τετρακοσιοστός*,  
*ῆ, ὄν*.

— horse chariot : *τὸ τέθριππον*.

fourth : *τέταρτος, η, ον*.

fowl : *vide* 'bird.'

fox : *ῆ ἀλώπηξ, πεκος*.

frequently : *πολλάκις*.

friend : *ὁ (ῆ) φίλος*.

from (prep.) : gen. alone : *ἀπό*,  
*ἐκ*, (of persons, *παρά*), all with  
gen.

—, out of : *ἐκ*, gen.

— (feelings, passions) : *ὑπό*,  
gen.

— (the side of, from beside) :  
*παρά*, gen. (of persons).

— (the direction of, Eng. 'to-  
ward') : *πρός*, gen.

front : in front (adv.) : *ἔμπρο-*  
*σθεν. οἱ ἔμπροσθεν*, 'those in  
front.'

— hall (also 'porter's room') :  
*τὸ θυρωρεῖον*.

frontier : boundary : *ὁ ὄρος, τὰ*  
*μεθόρια*.

fruitless : vain : *μάταιος, α, ον*.

fruitlessly : *μάτην*.

frying-pan : *τὸ τήγανον*.

full : full of : *πλήρης, ες* (exc.  
accent, § 79) ; *πλέως, α, ον*.

fuller (sb.) : *ὁ κναφεύς*.

full-fledged : use *ἄκρος, α, ον*.

full-moon (adj.) : *πανσέληνος, ον*.

funeral : *ῆ ταφή, ῆ ἐκφορά* (ac-  
cent, § 73, II. 1).

furlong : *τὸ στάδιον* (in pl. masc.  
or neut.).

furniture : *vide* S. V., No. 3.

furnished with : use *ἔχω*.

further : *παραπρωτέρω*, sometimes  
use adj. *ἄλλος* or *πλείων*.

## G

gain attention : use 'pay atten-  
tion,' *τὸν νοῦν προσέχαι*.

gain (as a suit) : win : *νικῶ*.

game : ἡ παιδιά.  
 —, 'to make — of, ἐπισκώπτω.  
 garlic : τὸ σκόροdon.  
 garrison-duty : ἡ φρουρά  
 gate : αἱ πύλαι.  
 gather together : συλλέγω.  
 general : ὁ στρατηγός.  
 geometry : ἡ γεωμετρία.  
 German (adj.) : Γερμανικός, ἡ, ὄν.  
 The Germans, οἱ Γερμανοί.  
 gesticulate : χειρονομέω.  
 get back : ἀπολαμβάνω.  
 giant : ὁ γίγας, αὐτός.  
 gibbous : curved on each side :  
 ἀμφίκυρτος, ὄν.  
 girl : *vide* 'young woman,' S.  
 V., No. 2.  
 give : δίδωμι, παραδίδωμι.  
 — an opinion : ἀποδείκνυμαι τὴν  
 γνώμην.  
 — back, up : ἀποδίδωμι.  
 — over : παραδίδωμι.  
 — way : ἐκκλίνω.  
 glistening : μαρμάρεος, α. ὄν.  
 στίλβων, οὐσα, ὄν.  
 go : ἔρχομαι, εἶμι, βαίνω, πορεύο-  
 μαι.  
 — against : *vide* 'defeated.'  
 — ahead or before or on : προ-  
 ἔρχομαι.  
 — around : περιέρχομαι.  
 — away, off : ἀπέρχομαι, ἀπείμι,  
 ἀποίχομαι.  
 — down : καταβαίνω.  
 — in : enter : εἰσείμι, εἰσέρχο-  
 μαι.  
 — on : pass by (as time) :  
 πρόεμι.  
 — out : ἐξέρχομαι, ἐξείμι.  
 — through with : διεξέρχομαι.

go up : ἀναβαίνω.  
 going, to be : to be on the  
 point of : μέλλω.  
 gone, to be : σίχομαι.  
 goad : τὸ κέντρον.  
 goat : *vide* S. V., No. 7.  
 gobble down : *vide* 'eat up.'  
 goblet : ἡ κύλιξ, ἱκος.  
 god : ὁ θεός.  
 goddess : ἡ θεά, ἡ θεός.  
 godless : atheistic : ἄθεος, ὄν.  
 gold : ὁ χρυσός. money, τὰ χρή-  
 ματα.  
 —, full of : χρυσίτις, τίδος.  
 golden : χρυσοῦς, ἡ, οὖν.  
 golden-plumed : χρυσοκόμος, ὄν.  
 good : ἀγαθός, ἡ, ὄν.  
 goose (sb.) : ὁ (ἡ) χήν, χηνός.  
 — (adj.) χήνεις, α, ὄν.  
 gracious : friendly : ὁ, ἡ, φιλό-  
 φρων, ὄνος. εὐμενής, ἔς.  
 grandfather : *vide* S. V., No. 2.  
 grandson (*vide* S. V., No. 2) :  
 ὁ υἱοῦς, οὗ (ὁ υἱονός, H.)  
 grant : accomplish : use ἐπιτε-  
 λέω.  
 granted, to be : use γίγνομαι.  
 grass : ἡ πόα.  
 grave : burial : ὁ τάφος.  
 great : large : μέγας, μεγάλη,  
 μέγα.  
 greater part : τὸ πολύ. the  
 majority, οἱ πολλοί.  
 greave : *vide* S. V., No. 6.  
 Greece : ἡ Ἑλλάς. ἄδος.  
 Greek (sb.) : ὁ Ἕλλην, ἦνος.  
 — (adj.) : Ἑλληνικός, ἡ, ὄν.  
 grief : τὸ πένθος, ἡ λύπη.  
 grieved, to be : to take amiss :  
 χαλεπῶς, βαρῶς φέρω.

ground : *vide* 'land,' 'farm.'  
 grow : increase : *αὐξάνομαι*.  
 —, i. e. 'make grow' : use *φύω*,  
 'produce.'  
 — into : become : *γίγνομαι*.  
 — angry : *χαλεπαίνω*, *ὀργίζομαι*.  
 — cold : *ψύχομαι*.  
 — dark (impers.) : *συσκοτάζει*.  
 — heavy : *βαρύνομαι*.  
 — hot : *θερμαίνομαι*, *φλέγω*  
 (poet.).  
 — stiff : *πήγνυμαι*.  
 — sulky : *ἀγανακτέω*.  
 — thin : *vide* 'thin.'  
 — weary : use *βαρύνομαι* or  
*ἀπαιρηκώς*.  
 — up, i. e. complete life : *τελε-  
 όομαι*.  
 guard : *vide* S. V., No. 6.  
 — (vb.) : *φυλάσσω*.  
 guess, to make a : *εικάζω*.  
 guest : *ὁ δειπνῶν*, *ὁ συμπότης*.  
 — chamber : *vide* S. V., No. 3.  
 — friend : *ὁ ξένος* (i. e. 'a  
 stranger').  
 guide : *vide* S. V., No. 6.  
 guilty : *αἷτιος*, *α*, *ον*.  
 Gypocentaurs : *οἱ Γυποκένταυ-  
 ροι*.

## H

habits : manner : *ὁ τρόπος*.  
 Hades : *ὁ Ἅιδης*, *ὁ ᾍδης*.  
 hail : *vide* S. V., No. 4.  
 hair : *ἡ θρίξ*, *τριχός*, *ἡ κόμη*. *Vide*  
*S. V.*, No. 1.  
 half-dead : *ὁ, ἡ ἡμιθνής*, *νῆγρος*.

half-moon (adj.) : *διχότομος*, *ον*  
 (= 'cut in half'). Accent,  
 § 78, 2.  
 halyard : *ἡ ὑπέρα* (use pl.).  
 hand : *ἡ χεὶρ*, *χειρός*.  
 — over (vb.) : *παραδίδωμι*.  
 handle : treat : manage : *διατί-  
 θημι*.  
 handsome : *εὐπρεπής*, *ές*.  
 hang, to (intr.) : to be sus-  
 pended : *κρέμαμαι*.  
 —, to : to strangle one's self :  
*ἀπάγχωμαι*.  
 happen (chance) : *τυγχάνω*. *οο-  
 ουρ*, *γίγνομαι*. turn out, *συμ-  
 βαίνω* (often impers.).  
 happiness : *ἡ εὐδαιμονία*.  
 happy, to account : congratu-  
 late, *μακαρίζω*.  
 hard : hard to bear : *χαλεπός*,  
*ἡ, ὄν*.  
 hare (sb.) : *ὁ λαγώς*.  
 —, of (adj.) : *λαγῶς*, *α*, *ον*. *τὰ  
 λαγῶα*, 'hare's meat,' 'delica-  
 cies.'  
 harm : to injure : *ἀδικέω*, *βλά-  
 πτω*.  
 —, to suffer : *πάσχω*.  
 haste : energy (sb.) : *ἡ σπουδή*.  
 Accent, § 73, 2, 1.  
 hasten (intr.) : *ἐπείγομαι*.  
 hatch (peel off) : *ἐκλέπω*.  
 hate : *μισέω*.  
 have : hold : *ἔχω*. Often use  
*ἐστί* and dat. of poss.  
 he, him, himself, etc. : *vide* § 9.  
 head : *ἡ κεφαλή*.  
 heal : *vide* 'cure.'  
 hear : *ἀκούω*.  
 heart : *ἡ καρδιά*.

hearth : ἡ ἑστία.  
 heaven : *vide* S. V., No. 4.  
 heaviness : τὸ βάρος.  
 heavy, to grow : βαρύνομαι.  
 heavy-armed soldier : ὁ σπλίτης.  
*vide* S. V., No. 6.  
 Hecatombaion : ὁ Ἑκατομβαῖον,  
 ὦνος.  
 Hector : ὁ Ἑκτωρ.  
 Hecuba : ἡ Ἑκάβη.  
 height : summit : extremity :  
 τὸ ἄκρον.  
 Helen : ἡ Ἑλένη.  
 Helios : ὁ ἥλιος.  
 helmet : *vide* S. V., No. 6.  
 helmsman : ὁ κυβερνήτης (Lat.  
*gubernator*).  
 hemlock : τὸ κώνειον.  
 hen : ἡ ἀλεκτορίς, ἰδος or ἡ ἀλεκ-  
 τρυών.  
 hence (from this place) : ἐνθένδε,  
 ἐντεῦθεν.  
 — from this circumstance) :  
 ἐκ τούτου.  
 Hephaestus : ὁ Ἥφαιστος.  
 Herakles (Hercules) : Ἡρακλῆς,  
 εἶους.  
 herd, in a (adv.) : ἀγεληδόν.  
 here : ἐνταῦθα, ἐνθάδε, αὐτοῦ.  
 hereafter : again : αὐθις.  
 Hermes : Mercury : ὁ Ἑρμῆς.  
 Herodotus : ὁ Ἡρόδοτος.  
 Hesione : ἡ Ἡσιόνη.  
 hesitate : δκνέω.  
 hesitation, without : clearly  
 (adv.) : σαφῶς.  
 high : ὑψηλός, ἡ, ὄν, or use  
 μέγας.  
 —, on : raised up (adj.) : με-  
 τέωρος, ον (√ cf. Eng. *meteor*).

hire : to let : μισθώ. to have  
 let to one, μισθόομαι.  
 his : *vide* § 9.  
 hither : δεῦρο, ἐνθάδε, ἐνταῦθα.  
 hold down : restrain : κατέχω.  
 hold out : stretch : ὀρέγω (poet.).  
 — — : endure : ἀντέχω.  
 hole : ἡ τρώγλη (√ τρώγω, 'gnaw').  
 hollow (vb.) : κοιλαίνω.  
 holy silence : ἡ εὐφημία.  
 home : *vide* 'house.'  
 —ward : οἶκαδε.  
 —, to be away from : ἀποδη-  
 μέω.  
 —, to be at : to be in town :  
 ἐπιδημέω.  
 Homer : ὁ Ὅμηρος.  
 honor : raise to honor (vb.) :  
 τιμάω.  
 hoof : nail : ὁ δυνξ, υχος.  
 hope : ἐλπίζω.  
 horn : τὸ κέρας (κέρατος or κέρως).  
 horrors : τὰ δεινά.  
 horse : ὁ ἵππος.  
 horseman : cavalry : *vide* S. V.,  
 No. 6.  
 hospitable : φιλόξενος, ον.  
 hot : θερμός, ἡ, ὄν.  
 house : ἡ οἰκία, ὁ οἶκος.  
 at the — of : use παρά and dat.  
 of person.  
 housebreaker : burglar : *vide*  
 S. V., No. 3.  
 household, of the (adj.) : οἰ-  
 κείος, α, ον. οἱ οἰκεῖοι, 'those  
 at home.'  
 house-top : τὸ τέγος (also =  
 'room').  
 how ? (direct) : πῶς ; ποῖα τρό-  
 πω ; (indirect, ὅπως).

however: † μέντοι, † δέ.

how many? πόσος; η; ον; *vide* S. V., No. 9.

— much: ὅσος, η, ον (ind. quest. ὅπῃσος, η, ον).

— soever: ὅπως (+ ἄν with subj.).

— that: ὥς + fin. verb after verbs of saying, etc., § 54.

huge: μέγας.

human: ἀνθρώπινος, η, ον.

humped: arched: κυρτός, ή, όν. (H.)

hunger: ὁ λιμός.

hunt: θηρεύω, θηράω.

hurl: ῥίπτω.

— from, down: ῥίπτω κατά c. gen.

husband: *vide* S. V., No. 2.

hut: ἡ στέγη. ἡ καλύβη. ἡ οἰκία.

# I

I: ἐγώ, or pers. ending; *vide* § 9.

if: εἰ with indic. or opt.; εἰάν (ἤν, ἄν) with subj.; *vide* § 40.

ignoble: ἀγεννής, ές.

ignominiously: ἀτίμως καὶ αἰσχροῶς.

Ilium: *vide* 'Troy.'

ill, to be: νοσέω.

—, to fall: ἐνόσησα. *Vide* § 24.

image: ἡ εἰκών (√ cf. Eng. *iconoclastic*).

imitate: μιμέομαι.

imitation: ἡ μίμησις.

Immediately: εὐθύς.

immortality: ἡ ἀθανασία.

impious: ἀσεβής, ές, ἄθεος, ον.

imported: ἐπακτός, όν (√ ἄγω).

impossible: ἀδύνατος, ον.

—, it is not possible: οὐκ ἔστιν.

impregnable: invulnerable: ἄρρηκτος, ον (√ ῥήγνυμι).

in: ἐν, dat.; 'in' is often contained in trans. verb; often tr. by participle.

— (time when): *vide* § 65 (vi.).

— (as to): acc. alone or dat. alone.

— (course of): διά, gen.

— place of: instead of: ἀπí, gen.

inasmuch as: ἄτε δή, or use † δέ.

inclination: judgment: γνώμη (√ γνω, cf. *know*).

incredible: ἀπιστος, ον, or use οὐ and πιστός, ή, όν.

indeed: † μὲν (foll. by δέ).

India: ἡ Ἰνδία.

Indians: οἱ Ἰνδοί.

indignant, to be: to take ill: ἀγανακτέω, δυσφορέω, or use φέρω or ἔχω with adv. δεινώς, χαλεπῶς, βαρέως.

induce: persuade: πείθω.

infantry: *vide* S. V., No. 6.

inferior: ἡσσων, ον, ελάσσων, ον.

inflict blows: ἐντείνω πληγὰς (dat.).

inhabit: ἐνοικέω.

inhabitants: οἱ ἐνοικοῦντες.

injure: ἀδικέω.

inspect: ἐπισκοπέω, ἐφοράω.

inquire: learn by inquiry: *πυνθάνομαι*.

insufficiently: badly: *φλαύρως*.

insult (vb.): *ὕβριζω*.

interpreter: *ὁ ἐρμηνεύς*.

interrupt: rejoin: *ὑπολαμβάνω*.

inundation: flood: *ἡ ἐπίκλυσις, ὁ κατακλυσμός*.

Ion: *ὁ Ἴων, ὠνος*.

Iphigenia: *ἡ Ἰφιγένεια*.

iron: *ὁ σίδηρος*.

irremediable: *ἀνήκεστος, ον*.

island: *ἡ νῆσος*.

islander (noun or adj.): *ὁ νησιώτης, ἡ νησιώτις*.

it: itself: *vide* § 9.

Italy: *ἡ Ἰταλία, ἡ Ἑσπερία*.

## J

Jamaica: *ἡ Ἰαμαϊκή*.

javelin: *τὸ ἀκόντιον, ἡ λόγχη* (poet.).

jaw, *ἡ γνάθος*.

Jocasta: *ἡ Ἰοκάστη*.

joined (being together): use *συνάγω* or *ἅμα . . . ὦν*.

journey (vb.): *ὁδοιπορέω* (√ *ὁδός*).

— (sb.): change of abode: *ἡ μετοίκησης* (√ *οἶκος*).

judge: *ὁ δικαστής, ὁ κριτής*.

jugglery: *ἡ τερατεία*.

jump: *πηδάω, ἄλλομαι*.

— down: *καταπηδάω*.

— from: *ἐκπηδάω*.

— into: *εἰσάλλομαι*.

— on: *ἐνάλλομαι*.

— over: *ὑπεράλλομαι*.

— up: *ἐξανίστημι*.

jury: the judges: *οἱ δικασταί*.

just (adj.): *δίκαιος, α, ον*.

— as: *ὥσπερ*, sometimes use *ὅπερ, καθάπερ*.

— as if: *ὥσπερ*

— in time: *ἐν καιρῷ*.

justice: *ἡ δίκη, ἡ δικαιοσύνη*

justly: *δικαίως*.

## K

keen vision, of (adj.): *ὀξυδερκής, ἔς*

keep (have): *ἔχω*.

— (rear): *τρέφω*.

— off: keep out: *ἀπείργω*.

— put away: guard: *φυλάττω*.

kill: *κτείνω*. As passive use *ἀποθνήσκω*, 'die.'

kindle beacon fires: *πυρσεύω*.

king: *ὁ βασιλεύς*.

—, to be: *βασιλεύω*.

—, to become: *ἐβασίλευσα*, cf.

§ 24.

kingly: royal: *βασιλῆος, α, ον, βασιλικός, ἡ, ὄν*.

Kleodēmus: *ὁ Κλεόδημος*.

Klotho: *ἡ Κλωθώ, οὗς* (√ *κλώθω*, 'spin').

knee: *vide* S. V., No. 1.

knife: *ἡ μάχαιρα, κοπίς, ἴδος*.

know: *οἶδα, γινώσκω* (√ *γνώ*), *μανθάνω, ἐπίσταμαι*.

—, not — how: often use *οὐκ ἔχω ὅπως*.

—, to be conscious of: *συνειδέναι ἐαυτῷ*.

knowledge, without — of: use *λανθάνω*.

Kyniscus: *ὁ Κυνίσκος* (√ *κύων*).



## L

Labdacus: ὁ Λάβδακος.  
 Lachesis: ἡ Λάχεσις (√ λαγ-  
 χάνω).  
 'lacos': λακός  
 ladder: stairs: *vide* S. V.,  
 No. 3.  
 Laius: ὁ Λαῖος.  
 Lama: ὁ Λάμας.  
 lame: χωλός, ἡ, ὄν.  
 lamp: *vide* S. V., No. 3.  
 Lampus: ὁ Λάμπος.  
 land: ἡ γῆ, ἡ χθών (poet.); a  
 piece of land, τὸ χωρίον.  
 Laomedon: ὁ Λαομέδων. οντος.  
 lap-dog: *vide* 'dog.'  
 large: great: μέγας. μεγάλη,  
 μέγα.  
 last (adj.): τελευταῖος, α, ον.  
 — preceding: foregoing: use  
 παρεληλυθώς, νῖα, ὅς.  
 —, at (adv.): (τὸ) τέλος.  
 later on: afterwards: μετὰ  
 ταῦτα.  
 laugh: γελάω.  
 — at: καταγελάω, gen.; ap-  
 provingly, ἐπιγελάω.  
 lawsuit: ἡ δίκη.  
 lawyer: ὁ συνήγορος.  
 lay (eggs): beget: τίκτω.  
 — hold of: *vide* 'take hold  
 of.'  
 — out (for burial): προτίθεμαι.  
 lead: ἄγω. guide, ἡγέομαι, ὑφη-  
 γέομαι.  
 — (as a road): φέρω.  
 — out, back: ἐξάγω.  
 leaf: τὸ φύλλον.  
 leap (forth): ἐκπηδάω.

leap over: *vide* 'jump.'  
 — upon: ἐπιπηδάω.  
 learn: know: μαρθάνω.  
 — by inquiry: πυνθάνομαι.  
 —, perceive: αἰσθάνομαι.  
 learned: πολυμαθής ἐς.  
 least (adj.): ἐλάχιστος, η, ον.  
 — (adv.): ἥκιστα.  
 —, at: † γε. if not, otherwise,  
 εἰ δὲ μή.  
 not —: οὐχ ἥκιστα. καὶ δὲ καί,  
 'and above all.'  
 leave: leave behind: λείπω,  
 καταλείπω.  
 — alone: let alone: allow:  
 εἰω.  
 left (hand): ἀριστερός, α, ὄν. ἡ  
 ἀριστερά.  
 leg: τὸ σκέλος.  
 length (i. e. measure): τὸ μέ-  
 τρον.  
 Leocorium: τὸ Λεωκόριον.  
 lest: μή  
 let down: καθίημι.  
 — go: μεθίημι, ἀφίημι, καθίημι.  
 — in: ἐφίημι.  
 — be known: make plain:  
 δηλώω.  
 level: ὀμαλός, ἡ, ὄν.  
 lick (around): περιλείχω.  
 lie: recline: κείμει.  
 — down: lie out: κατάκειμαι,  
 κατακλίνομαι.  
 life: ὁ βίος, ἡ ζωή, ἡ ψυχή (also  
 'soul'). affairs, τὰ πράγματα.  
 light: (sb.) τὸ φῶς, φωτός.  
 light-armed: ψιλός, ἡ, ὄν. *Vide*  
 S. V., No. 6.  
 lighten (make less heavy): κου-  
 φίζω.

lighten (flash): ἀστράπτω.  
 lightning: *vide* S. V., No. 4.  
 like (vb.): *vide* 'wish.'  
 — (adj.): ὁμοιος, dat., or *vide*  
 'resemble' or 'imitate.'  
 — as: ὥσπερ, καθάπερ.  
 in — manner: ὡσαύτως.  
 limbs: τὰ κῶλα (esp. 'legs');  
 τὰ μέλη (members).  
 linger: διατρίβω (sc. χρόνον),  
 μέλλω, βραδύνω.  
 lip: τὸ χεῖλος.  
 listen: hear: ἀκούω.  
 listless: ῥάθυμος, ον.  
 little: ὀλίγος, η, ον, μικρός, á, όν.  
 live: to be alive: ζάω. pass  
 one's life, ζάω, βιόω, διάγω.  
 —, dwell: οἰκέω.  
 — out to the end: καταβιόω.  
 liver: τὸ ἥπαρ, ἥπατος.  
 loaded with: full of: πλήρης, ες  
 (exc. in accent, § 79, 1).  
 lofty: ὑψηλός, ή, όν.  
 long: μακρός á, όν (far); also  
 use μέγας and πολύς.  
 — ago: πάλαι.  
 longer: *vide* 'more.'  
 look: βλέπω.  
 — at: θεάομαι.  
 — closely or intently: ἀτενίζω.  
 — down: καθοράω.  
 — into, toward, or at: ἀποβλέ-  
 πω εἰς or πρὸς, acc.  
 lose: ἀπόλλυμι (*vide* 'destroy').  
 — or change (color): διαφθείρω.  
 loss, to be at a: ἀπορέω.  
 love: friendship: ἡ φιλία.  
 — (vb.): φιλέω, στέργω.  
 Lucian: ὁ Λουκιανός.  
 luncheon: breakfast: τὸ ἄριστον.

## M

maiden: girl: ἡ παρθένος, ἡ κόρη.  
 maid-servant: ἡ θεραπαινα, αἱ  
 οἰκεῖαι (S. V., No. 3).  
 mainland, dwellers on (sb. or  
 adj.): ἡπειρώτης (f. ὤτης).  
 make: do: ποιέω. render so  
 and so, ἀποδείκνυμι.  
 — game of, ridicule: σκώπτω.  
 male (adj.): ἄρσεν, εν.  
 Maltese: Μελιταῖος, α, ον.  
 maltreat: αἰκίζομαι, aor. pass.  
 ἡκίσθην.  
 man: ὁ ἀνήρ, ἀνδρός (vīr); ὁ (ἡ)  
 ἄνθρωπος (homo).  
 mankind: οἱ ἄνθρωποι.  
 manner: ὁ τρόπος (accent, § 74,  
 2).  
 mantle: cloak: τὸ ἱμάτιον.  
 many: much: πολὺς, πολλή,  
 πολὺ (πλείων, πλείστος).  
 march: πορεύομαι.  
 market-place: market: ἡ ἀγο-  
 ρά.  
 marry: γαμέω.  
 mast: ὁ ἰστός (√ ἴστημι).  
 master (despot): ὁ δεσπότης.  
 — (teacher): ὁ διδάσκαλος.  
 the —, often ἐκεῖνος.  
 matter: τὸ πρᾶγμα.  
 mean (wish to say): βούλομαι.  
 — (signify, e.g. as a word):  
 δύναμαι.  
 means: device: ἡ μηχανή.  
 meanwhile: ἐν τούτῳ.  
 meat: *vide* 'flesh.'  
 medicine, the art of: ἡ ἱατρικὴ  
 (sc. τέχνη).  
 meet: ἀπαντάω, dat. or c. πρερ-.

**Megara** : τὰ Μέγαρα. to —, Μέ-  
γαράδε.  
**member** : part : τὸ μέρος.  
**Memphis** : ἡ Μέμφις, εως and  
ιδος.  
**Menelaüs** : ὁ Μενέλεως, ω (ac-  
cent, cf. Μενέλαος).  
**Menon** : ὁ Μένων, ωνος.  
**men's apartments** : *vide* S. V.,  
No. 3.  
**mention** : *vide* 'tell.'  
**mercenary** : μισθοφόρος, ον (ac-  
cent, § 78, 1).  
**merchantman** : ἡ ὀλκάς, ἀδος  
(√ ἔλκω).  
**Merope** : ἡ Μερόπη.  
**merry, to be** : to make — : εὐ-  
φραίνομαι, τέρπομαι.  
**messengers** : οἱ πρέσβεις, οἱ ἄγ-  
γελοι.  
**messmate** : ὁ σύσσιτος.  
**methinks** : δοκεῖ μοι.  
**midday** : ἡ μεσημβρία.  
**middle, midst** : μέσος, η, ον.  
**mighty** : μέγας.  
**milk** : τὸ γάλα, γάλακτος.  
**Miltiades** : ὁ Μιλτιάδης.  
**mina (100 drachmae)** : ἡ μνᾶ.  
**miraculous** : θεῖος, α, ον (accent,  
§ 77, 2).  
**mirror** : τὸ κάτοπτρον.  
**miss** : ἀμαρτάνω, ἀποτυγχάνω, πα-  
ραλλάσσω, all c. gen.  
**misshapen** : ἀμορφος, ον.  
**missile** : τὸ βέλος.  
**mock** : χλευάζω, σκώπτω. insult,  
ὕβριζω.  
**monk** : ὁ μοναχός (√ μόνος).  
**month** : ὁ μήν, μηνός.  
**moon** : ἡ Σελήνη.

**moonlit** : use λάμπω, 'shine.'  
**moor (vb.)** : ὀρμίζω. lie at an-  
chor, ὀρμίζομαι.  
**more (adj.)** : μείζων, πλείων,  
sometimes use ἄλλος.  
— (adv.) : μᾶλλον, ἔτι.  
**no —, no longer** : οὐκέτι. nor  
any longer, οὐδὲ . . . ἔτι  
πλείων.  
**nothing — : none the —** : οὐ-  
δὲν ἔτι.  
**moreover** : ἔτι, use καὶ δὴ, (re-  
sumptive) † τοίνυν.  
and —, and what's more : καὶ  
δὴ καί, καὶ μὴν (καί).  
**mortal (sb.)** : ὁ (ἡ) ἄνθρωπος.  
**mortality** : tr. 'the being mor-  
tal.'  
**mother** : ἡ μήτηρ, μητρός.  
**mould (vb.)** : πλάσσω.  
**mount upon** : ἀναβαίνω, ἐπιβαίνω.  
**mountain** : τὸ ὄρος.  
**mouse** : *vide* S. V., No. 7.  
**mouth** : *vide* S. V., No. 1.  
**move** : κινέω.  
**much** : *vide* 'many.'  
by — : πολλῶ.  
**mud** : ὁ βόρβορος (accent, § 78, 3).  
**mule** : ὁ (ἡ) ἥμιονος.  
**multitude** : crowd : τὸ πλῆθος.  
**murderer** : ὁ φονεὺς (accent, § 76).  
**music** : ἡ μουσική.  
**must** : must needs : χρὴ, δεῖ, or  
use ἀνάγκη.  
**my** : ἐμός, ἡ, ὄν, often article  
with noun, § 3 (c).  
**Mycenae** : αἱ Μυκῆναι.  
**myself** : *vide* § 9.  
**myrrh** : ἡ σμύρνα (cf. μύρρα with  
Eng.).

## N

nail : spike : ὁ ἥλος.  
 name (sb.) : τὸ ὄνομα.  
 — (vb.) : ὀνομάζω.  
 named after : ἐπώνυμος, ον.  
 narrow : στενός, ἡ, ύν.  
 nation : τὸ ἔθνος, τὸ γένος.  
 native : of the country (adj.) :  
 ἐπιχώριος, α, ον.  
 naturally : εἰκότως, ὡς εἰκός (ἐστι).  
 nature : ἡ φύσις.  
 Naucratis : ἡ Ναύκρατις.  
 Nausimachus : ὁ Ναυσίμαχος.  
 near (adj.) : πλησίος, α, ον (exc.  
 accent, § 77, 2).  
 — (adv.) : πλησίον, ἐγγύς, gen.  
 —, nearly : almost (adv.) :  
 σχεδόν, σχεδόν τι, μόνον οὐ.  
 Nearchus : ὁ Νέαρχος.  
 necessary (adj.) : ἀναγκαῖος, α,  
 ον.  
 —, it is : ἀνάγκη ἐστί, δεῖ, χρή.  
 necessity : ἡ ἀνάγκη.  
 neck : vide S. V., No. 1.  
 need : ἡ ἔνδεια, or vide 'neces-  
 sary.'  
 —, to be in : to have — : δέ-  
 ομαι.  
 must needs : δεῖ, ἔδει.  
 neglect : ἀμελέω, gen.  
 negotiate : πράσσω.  
 neighbor : ὁ γείτων. next —,  
 see 'next.'  
 neither . . . nor : μήτε . . . μήτε,  
 or οὔτε . . . οὔτε (vide § 18).  
 never : οὔποτε, μήποτε (vide  
 § 18).  
 — yet : not yet : not at all :  
 οὔπω.

nevertheless : ὅμως, καίτοι, οὐ  
 μὴν ἀλλά, † μέντοι.  
 new. : νέος, (α), ον.  
 — -born : νεογενής, ἐς.  
 next neighbor : ὁ πλησίον.  
 night : ἡ νύξ, νυκτός. by night,  
 νυκτός or νυκτῶρ.  
 Nile : ὁ Νεῖλος.  
 nine : ἐννέα.  
 ninety : ἐνενήκοντα.  
 Nitocris : ἡ Νίτωκρις.  
 no, none : οὐδεῖς, οὐδεμία, οὐδέν,  
 or μηδεῖς. Sometimes use οὐ.  
 nobles : οἱ ἄριστοι, or use εὐγε-  
 νής.  
 noblest : sup. of ἀγαθός.  
 noose : ὁ βρόχος.  
 nor : οὐδέ, or vide 'neither' or  
 'not.'  
 north (bear) : ἡ Ἄρκτος. (north-  
 wind), ὁ βορέας.  
 —, of the : βόρειος, ον.  
 nose : vide S. V., No. 1.  
 not : οὐ, μή. Vide § 18.  
 — again : no longer : οὐκέτι.  
 — even : and — : but — : nor :  
 οὐδέ, μηδέ (§ 18).  
 — only . . . but also : οὐ μό-  
 νον . . . ἀλλὰ καί.  
 — so ! by no means ! μηδαμῶς.  
 notch of the arrow : ἡ γλυφίς,  
 ἴδος (use pl.).  
 note : voice : τὸ φθέγμα.  
 nothing : (οὐδεῖς) οὐδέν.  
 notice : perceive : αἰσθάνομαι,  
 (know) μαρθάνω, (see) δρᾶω.  
 pay attention, προσέχω τὸν  
 νοῦν.  
 now (at this time) : νῦν.  
 — ! why ! ἀλλά.

now: now then (as conj. or conn. particle): † δέ, ἀλλά, † οὖν.

nowhere: οὐδαμοῦ.

number: ὁ ἀριθμός, or *vide* 'many.'

numerous: *vide* 'many.'

nurse: ἡ τροφός (√τρέφω). Accent, § 74, I.

— (vb.): care for: ἐπιμελέομαι (fut. mid. -λήσομαι), gen.

## O

oath: ὁ ὅρκος.

obedient: ὑπήκοος, ον (√ἀκούω).

obol (3 + cents): ὁ ὀβολός (1/6 of drachma).

obtain: hit upon: τυγχάνω, gen.

— terms: διαπράττομαι (e.g. σωτηρίαν).

occasion, to afford (vb.): παρέχω.

— (sb.), on one: ποτέ.

occur (happen): γίγνομαι.

— (come to mind): παρίσταμαι.

Ocean: Oceanus (esp. Atlantic): ὁ Ὠκεανός.

Odysseus (Ulysses): ὁ Ὀδυσσεύς.

Oedipus: ὁ Οἰδίπους, -ποδος.

Oenone: ἡ Οἰνώνη.

of: gen. case.

— (concerning): περί, gen.

—, on account: διά, acc.

offer (i.e. try to give) use pres. stem of δίδωμι.

— for sale: sell: πωλέω.

— sacrifice: θύω, ἀποτελέω.

often: oftentimes: πολλάκις.

old (adv.): of old: πάλαι.

— (adj.): *vide* 'elder.'

—, of (adj.): παλαιός, á, óν, ἀρχαίος, α, ον, οί ἀρχαίοι, the ancients.

—, anciently: in the olden time: τὸ ἀρχαῖον, τὸ παλαιόν.

— man: ὁ γέρων, οντος, ὁ πρεσβύτης.

— woman: *vide* S. V., No. 2.

Olympus: ὁ Ὀλυμπος.

on: ἐπί, dat. (or gen. always in some phrases, e.g. ἐφ' ἵππων), ἐν, dat.; (motion towards) κατά, acc.

on account of: διὰ, acc.

once (upon a time): ποτέ.

— (for all): ἀπαξ.

at —: εὐθύς.

one (numeral): εἷς, μία, ἓν.

— any one: τις, τι.

— day: ποτέ.

one another: ἀλλήλων, etc.

on high: *vide* 'high.'

only (adj.): μόνος, η, ον. (exc. accent, § 77, notes).

— (adv.): μόνον.

open (vb.): ἀνοίγω.

— (to the sky), adj.: ὑπαίθριος, α, ον.

opinion: ἡ γνώμη.

or: ἤ.

oracle: ὁ χρησμός (*the place and the answer*, τὸ μαντεῖον).

orator: ὁ ῥήτωρ.

order: προστάσσω.

in order to: ἵνα, ὥς, ὅπως (*vide* § 36).

ordinary: worthless: bad: φαῦλος, η, ον.

Orontes : ὁ ὄρνις.  
 orphan : ὁ (ῆ) ὀρφανός.  
 Osiris : ὁ Ὀσίρις (εως or ιδος).  
 other : ἄλλος, η, ον. οἱ ἄλλοι,  
 the rest.  
 — of two (or in contrasts):  
 ἕτερος, α, ον.  
 otherwise : ἄλλως, εἰ δὲ μή.  
 our : ἡμέτερος, α, ον, or use article,  
*vide* § 3 (c).  
 — time, of: use article and  
 νῦν.  
 outcome : consummation : τὸ  
 τέλος.  
 out of : ἐκ, gen. through : διὰ,  
 gen.  
 outline : ἡ περιγραφή.  
 outside of : ἔξω, gen. (adv. and  
 prep.)  
 over : above (prep.): ὑπέρ, gen.  
 — head : above (adv.): ἄνω.  
 overflow banks (of Nile) : πελα-  
 γίζω (√πέλαγος).  
 — (of a brook) : ὑπεραίρω.  
 overtake : καταλαμβάνω.  
 owe : ὀφείλω.  
 ox : bull : cow : ὁ (ῆ) βούς, βοός.  
 ox-spit : βουπόρος ὀβελίσκος (ac-  
 cent, § 78, 1 and § 74, 5).

## P

pain, to be in : ὠδίνω.  
 pair : τὸ ζεύγος.  
 palisade : stockade : τὸ σταύ-  
 ρωμα.  
 Pandocus : ὁ Πανδόκος.  
 Paphlagonian : Παφλαγονικός, ἡ,  
 ὄν.

parent : ὁ τοκεύς.  
 Paris, Alexander : ὁ Πάρις, ἰδος.  
 parricidal : πατροκτόνος, ον (ac-  
 cent, § 78, 1).  
 part : τὸ μέρος, or use τις, τι.  
 particularly : (καί) μάλιστα, καί.  
 partly . . . partly : τοῦτο μὲν . . .  
 τοῦτο δέ.  
 party : trans. 'the ones who.'  
 pass, to come to : *vide* 'occur.'  
 — : to get free of : παραλ-  
 λάσσω.  
 — by : παριέναι. sail by, παρα-  
 πλέω.  
 — through : διέρχομαι, διεξέρ-  
 χομαι.  
 passenger (also fighting man  
 on board ship) : ὁ ἐπιβάτης.  
 pastry : τὰ πέμματα.  
 Patroclus : ὁ Πάτροκλος.  
 pay (cost) : pay down : κατα-  
 βάλλω, ἀποδίδωμι.  
 — up, back : ἀποδίδωμι.  
 — penalty : ἀποτίνω, or δίκην  
 δίδωμι.  
 peace : ἡ εἰρήνη.  
 peak : ἡ κορυφή.  
 peep out : παρακίπνω.  
 Peloponnesus : ἡ Πελοπόννησος.  
 peninsular : χερσονησοειδής, ἐς.  
 peltast : targeteer : *vide* S. V.,  
 No. 6.  
 people : persons : οἱ ἄνθρωποι,  
 or use article and adv.  
 perceive (notice) : αἰσθάνομαι.  
 (enjoy), ἀπολαύω.  
 perfect (adj.) : ἐντελής, ἐς.  
 perhaps : ἴσως.  
 perish : ἀπόλλυμαι and active 2  
 pf. ἔθλω.

peristyle : *vide* S. V., No. 3. ἡ αὐλή, 'the quadrangle;' τὸ περιστύλον, incl. 'the colonnade.'  
 perjury : ἡ ἐπιπορκία, or ptc. of ἐπιπορέω.  
 permitted, it is : ἔξεστι.  
 perplexity, to be in : ἀπορέω (also mid. voice).  
 Persian (sb.) : ὁ Πέρσης.  
 — (adj.) : Περσικός, ἡ, ὄν.  
 persist : abide by : ἐμμένω.  
 personal investigation : use ἡ ἱστορία with ἡ ἀπόδειξις.  
 persuade : πείθω.  
 pestilence : ὁ λοιμός.  
 Phaeton : ὁ Φαέθων.  
 phalanx : *vide* S. V., No. 6.  
 Phanosthenes : ὁ Φανοσθένης, ους.  
 Philhellene : ὁ (ἡ) Φιλέλλην, ηνος.  
 Philoctetes : ὁ Φιλοκτήτης.  
 'philologist' : ὁ φιλόλογος.  
 Philopoemen : ὁ Φιλοποίμην.  
 philosopher : ὁ φιλόσοφος.  
 Phoenix : ὁ Φοῖνιξ.  
 Phrygian : ὁ Φρύξ, γός.  
 physician : ὁ ἰατρός.  
 pick up : ἀναιρέω, αἶρω.  
 picture : painting : ἡ γραφή.  
 pierce : goad : κεντέω.  
 pierced through : διαίτορος, ον.  
 pig (boar, hog, sow) : ὁ (ἡ) ὕς, ὕος, also σὺς.  
 pillar (column) : ὁ κίων.  
 — (post with inscription) : ἡ στήλη (also — of Hercules).  
 pinch : πιέζω.  
 Pindar : ὁ Πίνδαρος.  
 pitted against, to be : to withstand : ἀνταίρω, πρὸς, acc. or mid. c. dat.

pity : οἰκτεῖρω, ἐλεέω.  
 place (vb.) : *vide* 'put.'  
 — (sb.) : ὁ τόπος, τὸ χωρίον.  
 plain : τὸ πεδῖον.  
 plaintiff : prosecutor : ὁ διώκων.  
 plan, to make or have a : μηχανάσθαι τι, or foll. by ὅπως or by acc. and inf.  
 plane-tree : ἡ πλάτανος.  
 plant (vb.) : φυτεύω.  
 plaster up : ἐπιπλάσσω.  
 — — inside : ἐμπλάσσω.  
 Plato : ὁ Πλάτων, ωνος.  
 platter : τὸ πινάκιον (usually = 'tablet').  
 play : παίζω.  
 play drunken tricks : παραινέω, impf. ἐπαρώνουν (ν οἶνος).  
 pleased, to be : ἡδομαι (aor. ἥσθην), τέρομαι.  
 pleases, it : seems good : δοκεῖ, also *vide* 'wish.'  
 pledge, to give a : δίδωμι τὴν πίστιν.  
 — one's health : προπίνω, dat.  
 plot against : ἐπιβουλεύω, dat.  
 plot of land : τὸ χωρίον.  
 plunder : ἀρπάζω.  
 poet : ὁ ποιητής.  
 point, to be on the — of : μέλλω, or fut. of given verb.  
 pole of wagon : ὁ ῥυμός.  
 Polites : ὁ Πολίτης.  
 Polybus : ὁ Πόλυβος.  
 Polydorus : ὁ Πολύδωρος.  
 Polyphēmus : ὁ Πολύφημος.  
 Pompey : ὁ Πομπήιος.  
 Pontus : ὁ Πόντος.  
 poor (adj.) : πένης, πτος.  
 — wretch : *vide* 'wretched'.

porter : doorkeeper : *vide* S. V., No. 3.

portico : ἡ στοά.

possess : ἔχω, κέκτημαι.

—, to take possession : κατέχω.  
possible, it is : ἐστί, ἔνεστι, ἔξεστι, οἷός τε (ἐστί).

pour in : tumble in (intr.) : ἐμπίπτω.

pray : εὐχομαι.

precipitous : ἀπόκρημνος, ον.

present, to be : παρῆναι. things present, τὰ παρόντα.

at — : *vide* 'now.'

— to : to give : δίδωμι, δωρέομαι (τί τινι, τινά τινι), παρέχω.

preservation : safety : ἡ σωτηρία.

Priam : ὁ Πρίαμος.

proboscis : ἡ προβοσκίς, ἰδος.

proceed : πορεύομαι, προέρχομαι.

produced, to be : use γίγνομαι.

property : τὰ χρήματα. possessions, τὰ κτήματα. real estate, land, τὸ χωρίον.

prophet : soothsayer : ὁ μάντις, ὁ προφήτης.

proportion, in — to : κατὰ λόγον.

prosperous : εὐτυχής, ἐς.

provide : παρασκευάζω.

provisions : τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.

public : belonging to the 'deme' : δημόσιος, α, ον.

publish (a book) : ἐκδίδωμι.

pull in contrary direction : drag off : ἀνθέλκω.

punish : *vide* 'avenge;' chastise, correct : κολάζω.

pursue : διώκω.

put : place : τίθηναι, in pass. use κείμαι. to station : καθίστημι.

— away (vb.) : ἀποτίθηναι.

— (adj.) : ἀπόθετος, ον.

— before : serve : προτίθηναι (pass. προκείμαι).

— in : ἐντίθηναι. add in : προστίθηναι.

— out : to blind : τυφλῶ.

— to death : ἀποκτείνω, pass. ἀποθνήσκω.

pyramid : ἡ πυραμίς, ἰδος.

Pyrrhus : ὁ Πύρρος.

Pythagoras : ὁ Πυθαγόρας.

## Q

quantity, small : trans. 'a little.'

quarrel (vb.) : ἐρίζω.

— (sb.) : ἡ ἔρις, ἰδος, τὸ νείκος. enmity : ἡ ἔχθρα.

quarrelsome : φιλόνεικος, ον.

queen : ἡ βασιλεία.

—, to be : or king : βασιλεύω.

— to become : or king : ἐβασίλευσα (§ 24).

quickly : ταχύ, τάχα, ταχέως.

quick-moving : αἰόλος, η, ον.

quiet (sb.) : ἡ ἡσυχία.

quiver : *vide* S. V., No. 6.

## R

race : *vide* S. V., No. 2.

radiant : λαμπρός, ἄ. ὄν. (ἡ λαμπρότης).

rain : *vide* S. V., No. 4.

raise up : ἐπαίρω.



ransom: τὸ λύτρον.  
 rare: scanty: σπάνιος, α, ον.  
 ravine: gully: ἡ χαράδρα.  
 reach: reach to: γίγνομαι πρὸς, dat.  
 — land: κατάγεσθαι (sc. εἰς τὸν λιμένα.  
 read: ἀναγιγνώσκω.  
 readily: εὐχερῶς, ῥαδίως.  
 ready, to be: μέλλω.  
 —, to make: prepare: ἐτοιμάζω, κατασκευάζω.  
 real: *vide* 'truth.'  
 rear (vb.): τρέφω.  
 rear, in the: behind (adv.): ὀπισθεν.  
 rebuke: scold: λοιδορέω, acc.; λοιδορέομαι, dat.; dep. aor. ἐλοιδορήθην.  
 recall: *vide* 'remember.'  
 — to mind: remind: ἀναμνήσκω.  
 receive: δέχομαι. (take, λαμβάνω.)  
 — into: εἰσδέχομαι.  
 recently: just now: ἄρτι, ἄρτίως.  
 reckon: reckon up: λογίζομαι.  
 — short: cheat: παραλογίζομαι.  
 reckoning (sb.): ὁ λογισμός.  
 recline: κατακλίνομαι.  
 rectangular: τετράγωνος, ον.  
 red, ἐρυθρός, α, ον, πυρρός, α, ον.  
 refuge, to take: escape: ἀποφεύγω.  
 refuse: οὐκ ἐθέλω.  
 regard: consider: νομίζω.  
 Regulus: ὁ Ῥήγουλος.  
 relate (vb.): *vide* 'tell,' 'say.'  
 release: *vide* 'give back.'

relentless: not to be turned aside: ἄντροπος, ον.  
 relish (fish, meat, sauce, dainties): τὸ ὄψον.  
 reluctant, to be: οὐκ ἐθέλω, ὀκνέω.  
 remain: μένω.  
 —, to be left over: περιεῖναι.  
 remarkable: wonderful: θαυμάσιος, α, ον,  
 remember: μέμνημαι. *Vide* § 26 (Caution).  
 remorse: repentance: ἡ μετάνοια.  
 repent: μετανοέω.  
 reply (vb.): εἶπον, ἀποκρίνομαι, ὑπολαμβάνω.  
 represent: *vide* 'imitate' (in literature use ποιέω).  
 reproach: reprove: μέμφομαι, aor. ἐμεμψάμην.  
 request: command (vb.): ἐντέλλομαι, dat.  
 —, prayer (sb.): ἡ εὐχή, (supplication) ἡ ἱκετεία.  
 rescue: σῶζω.  
 resemble, to: προσείκοι, dat., or use ὅμοιος, α, ον, dat.  
 resist: ἀντέχω, dat., or πρὸς, acc.; ἐναντιόομαι, dat.  
 resistless: *vide* 'relentless.'  
 resolve: δοκεῖ (impers.).  
 rest: to put down: κατατίθημι.  
 —, to stop for: ἀναπαύω. to lie down for —: κατακλίνομαι.  
 rest, the (adj.): *vide* 'other.'  
 restore: reinstate: ἀποκαθίστημι.  
 restrain: κατέχω.

retreat (vb.): ἀποχωρέω, ἀπέρχομαι.

— (sb.): ἡ ἀφοδος.

return: come back: ἐπανερχομαι. go away, ἀπέρχομαι.

in — for: ἀντί, gen.

reverend: σεμνός, ἡ, ὄν.

revile: *vide* 'rebuke.'

Rhodian: 'Ρόδιος, α, ον.

rhythmically: ἐν ῥυθμῷ.

rich: πλούσιος, α, ον.

riddance: deliverance: ἡ ἀπαλλαγή.

ride: to be carried: ὀχέομαι (√ ἔχω). — on a horse, ἵππεύω.

rider: ὁ ἀναβάτης.

right, it is: δεῖ, χρή.

— (hand): δεξιός, ἄ, ὄν (ἡ δεξιὰ).

rise: ἀνίσταμαι.

— above surface: use ὑπερέχω with φαίνομαι.

river: ὁ ποταμός.

road: ἡ ὁδός.

roll: κυλινδέω.

— from, out: ἐκκυλίνδω.

Roman: 'Ρωμαῖος, α, ον.

romance, lie (vb.): ψεύδομαι.

Rome: ἡ 'Ρώμη.

roof: *vide* S. V., No. 3. τὸ τέγος, ἡ ὀροφή.

room: chamber: *vide* S. V., No. 3. τὸ οἶκημα, ὁ θάλαμος.

rooster: *vide* 'cock.'

rope: ὁ κᾶλως.

—, coil of: a small —: τὸ καλῶδιον.

rosy-fingered: ῥοδοδάκτυλος, ον (H.).

round about: κύκλῳ.

royal: *vide* 'kingly.'

ruin: injure: λυμαίνομαι, aor.

ἐλυμνήμην

rule: ἄρχω.

as a —: (ὡς) τὸ ἐπίπαν.

run (vb.): τρέχω, θέω.

— away: ἀποτρέχω.

— out upon: ἐπεκθέω, ἐπεκτρέχω.

to — to: προστρέχω.

— up: εἰστρέχω, προστρέχω.

—, course: (sb.) ὁ δρόμος. δρόμῳ, 'on a run.'

rush along: φέρομαι.

— in: εἰσπίπτω.

## S

sabre: *vide* S. V., No. 6.

sacred: ἱερός, ἄ, ὄν, ἄγιος, α, ον.

safe (adj.): ἀσφαλής, ἐς.

to bring off —: ἀποσώζω.

to come off —: ἀποσώζομαι, aor. ἀπεσώθην.

safety: deliverance: ἡ σωτηρία.

sagacious: σοφός, ἡ, ὄν, φρόνιμος, (η), ον.

sail (vb.): πλέω.

— around: περιπλέω.

— away: ἀποπλέω.

— up along: ἀναπλέω.

— (sb.): τὸ ἱστιόν.

salâm, to make a: προσκυνέω, acc.

same: ὁ αὐτός, etc.

at the — time (adv.): ἅμα.

Samian: Σάμιος, α, ον.

sauce: soup: ὁ ζωμός.

savage: raw: cruel: ὠμός, ἡ, ὄν.

savages : οἱ βάρβαροι. Accent,  
§ 78 (3).

save : σώζω.

— : to get off safe (trv.) : ἀπο-  
σώζω.

to — a little : ἀποκερδαίνω.

savior : ὁ σωτήρ, ἦρος. The Sa-  
vior : ὁ Σωτήρ.

savor : ἡ κῆσις.

say : λέγω, φημί, εἶπον.

scale-covered : λεπιδωτός, ἡ, ὄν.

sceptre : τὸ σκῆπτρον.

scourge : μαστιγιόω.

scream : κραυγάζω (colloq.) ;  
κέκραγα (pf. as pres.).

Scythian (sb. or adj.) : ὁ Σκύθης.

sea : ἡ θάλασσα.

— (the high sea) : ὁ πόντος.

— (the wide-spread) : τὸ πέλα-  
γος.

seams : cracks : τὰ ἀνεωγμένα  
(√ ἀνοίγω, 'open').

search : ἐρευνάω.

season : ἡ ὥρα. ὁ καιρός.

second : δεύτερος, α, ὄν.

security : safety : ἡ ἀσφάλεια.

see : ὁράω, καθοράω, θεάομαι.

seem : δοκέω, ἔοικα, φαίνομαι.

— good : δοκεῖ.

seize : καταλαμβάνω.

— stealthily : filch away :  
ὑφαίρω.

seldom : scarce (adj.) : σπάνιος,  
α, ὄν.

self : use αὐτός (vide § 9), or use  
mid. voice.

— -possessed : ἐγκρατὴς ἑαυτοῦ.

senate : council : ἡ βουλή.

senator : ὁ βουλευτής.

send : πέμπω.

send away : ἀποπέμπω.

— down : καταπέμπω.

— for : summon : μεταπέμ-  
μαι.

sensibly : φρονίμως.

servant : ὁ θεράπων, ὁ ὑπερέτης, ὁ  
διάκονος (√ cf. Eng. *deacon*).

house — : ὁ οἰκέτης.

servitor : ὁ ὑπερέτης.

sesamè cake : ὁ σησαμούς, μούρ-  
τος (sc. πλακοῦς).

set before : set out : *vide* 'put  
before.'

— down : *vide* 'put.'

— fire : ἀπτω, ὑφάπτω.

settle, define : ὀρίζω (√ cf. Eng.  
*horizon*).

—, arrange : διατίθεμαι (sc. τὰ  
πράγματα).

seven : ἑπτά.

seventeen : ἑπτακαίδεκα.

seventh : ἑβδομος, η, ὄν.

several : use τῖς.

shadow : ἡ σκιά.

shame : ἡ αἰσχύνη. for —, from  
—, ὑπ' αἰσχύνης.

shameful : use sup. of αἰσχύρος.

sharp : ὀξύς, εἶα, ὄν.

shave : ξυρέω.

shears : scissors : ἡ ψαλὶς, ἴδος.

shepherd : ὁ ποιμήν, ἑνος.

shield (sb.) : *vide* S. V., No. 6.

—, to (vb.) : to cover with a

— : ὑπερασπίζω.

shine : λάμπω.

ship : ἡ ναῦς, τὸ πλοῖον.

shoot : τοξεύω.

shoot out : ἐκτοξεύω.

short : μικρός, ἄ, ὄν, βραχύς, εἶα, ὄν.

shoulder : *vide* S. V., No. 1.

shouting : ἡ κραυγή.  
 show : δείκνυμι, ἐπιδείκνυμι.  
 shudder : be rough : φρίσσω,  
     use pf. πέφρικα as pres.  
 shut up : close : συγκλείω.  
 sick : *vide* 'ill.'  
 side : ἡ πλευρά (use pl.).  
 silence : ἡ ἥσυχία.  
 silent, become : σιωπάω.  
 similar : παραπλήσιος, α, ον.  
 sing : ᾄδω.  
     — the paean : παιωνίζω.  
 sink (intr.) : καταδύομαι.  
 sister : ἡ ἀδελφή (poet.).  
 sit : κάθημαι.  
     — down : καθίζω (act. also =  
     ' set '), καθίζομαι.  
 situated, to be (of places) : κεῖ-  
     μαι.  
     —, to be (of towns) : use οἰκέω  
     or ναίω.  
 six hundred : ἑξακόσιοι, αι, α.  
 size : τὸ μέγεθος.  
 skeleton : ὁ κάναβος, and (late)  
     τὸ σκελετόν (usu. = 'mummy').  
 skiff : τὸ σκαφίδιον. Accent,  
     § 74 (5), and *vide* 'ship.'  
 skilful : ἔμπειρος, ον, σοφός, ἡ, όν.  
 skilled, to be : use οἶδα.  
 skim along : fly around : περι-  
     πέτομαι.  
 skin : hide : τὸ δέρμα, ἡ δορά.  
     — (of man) : ὁ χρώς, ωτός.  
 sky : heaven : *vide* S. V., No. 4.  
 slaughter : cut down (vb.) :  
     κόπτω.  
 slave : servant : *vide* S. V., No.  
     3). ὁ δοῦλος, ὁ παῖς. house  
     —, ὁ οἰκέτης.  
 slay : *vide* 'kill.'

sleep : καθεύδω.  
 sling (also 'sling-stone') : *vide*  
     S. V., No. 6.  
 slinger : *vide* S. V., No. 6.  
 slip between : διαδύω or διαδύο-  
     μαι.  
     — into : εισδύνω or εισδύομαι.  
 small : μικρός, á, όν.  
 smile : μειδιάω.  
     — at : ἐπιμειδιάω (H., etc.).  
     laugh at, -γελιάω.  
 smite : παίω (in pres.), (use πα-  
     τάσσω in aor.) ἐπάταξα.  
 smoke : ὁ καπνός.  
 smoke out : blacken with — :  
     καπνίζω.  
 smother : choke : ἀποπνίγω.  
 snow : *vide* S. V., No. 4.  
 so : οὕτω(ς).  
     — then : *vide* 'therefore.'  
     — . . . as : οὕτω(ς) . . . ὥστε.  
     — that : ὥστε. *Vide* § 52.  
     — much : τοσοῦτος, τοσαύτη,  
     τοσοῦτο.  
     —, to be : οὕτως ἔχω.  
 so-called : καλούμενος, η, ον.  
 Socrates : ὁ Σωκράτης, ους.  
 soldier : *vide* S. V., No. 6.  
 solitary : μόνος, η, ον.  
 some : τινές, ἐνιοι, αι, α.  
     — . . . others : use article with  
     † μέν and † δέ.  
     — one : something : τὶς, τι.  
     — where : † που (enclitic).  
     — times : ἐνίοτε, or ἄλλοτε μέν  
     foll. by ἄλλοτε δέ. So also  
     τότε or ὅτε with † μέν and † δέ.  
 son : ὁ υἱός (metapl. also decl.  
     as if from \*υιεύς): sometimes  
     use gen. case.

song : τὸ μέλος : ἡ ψῆδῃ (cf. Eng. *ode* and *melody*).  
 soul : life : ἡ ψυχῇ.  
 sound (vb.) : (voice) φθέγγομαι, (trumpet) σαλπίζω, σημαίνω.  
 — (sb.) : ἡ φωνή.  
 sound : well (adj.) : ὑγιής, ἐς (acc. ὑγιᾶ).  
 south-wind : ὁ Νότος.  
 sovereign : tyrant : ὁ τύραννος.  
 sovereignty : absolute power : ἡ τυραννίς, ἰδος.  
 space of time : fitting time : ὁ καιρός.  
 spare : φείδομαι, gen. (or foll. by μή, etc.).  
 speak : give utterance : φθέγγομαι.  
 spear : *vide* S. V., No. 6, or ἡ λόγχη.  
 speech : ἡ φωνή.  
 speed, at full : δρόμῳ.  
 spend (or, waste time) : διατρίβω.  
 spherical : σφαιροειδής, ἐς (√σφαῖρα, 'ball').  
 spin : κλώθω. to — to *or* over, ἐπικλώθω.  
 spindle : ὁ ἄτρακτος.  
 spiritless : ἄθυμος, *ov*.  
 spite, in — of : βίᾳ, gen.  
 spot : place : ὁ τόπος.  
 sprain : twist (vb.) : στρέφω, 2 aor. pass. ἐστράφην.  
 Spring : *vide* S. V., No. 5.  
 staff : cane : ἡ βακτηρία.  
 stand (intr.) : ἵσταμαι (also intr. in 2 aor., pf., and plpf. active).  
 — by, near : be present : πα-

stand firm : use pf. of ἵστημι (for intr. use see above).  
 — over (intr.) : ἐφίσταμαι (also 2 aor., pf., and plpf. active).  
 — up : rise (intr.) : ἀνίσταμαι (also 2 aor., pf., and plpf. active).  
 star : *vide* S. V., No. 4.  
 start : set out : rush (intr.) : δρμάομαι, aor. ὤρμήθην.  
 — off (trv.) : send away : ἀφίημι.  
 statue : ἡ ἀνδριάς, ἀντρος (√ ἀνήρ).  
 steadfastly : βεβαίως.  
 steal : κλέπτω.  
 — away : carry off : ἀρπάζω.  
 stiffen (intr.) : πήγνυμαι, 2 aor. ἐπάγην (also pf. act. πέπηγα).  
 still, quiet (adj.) : ἡσυχος, *ov*.  
 —, yet (adv.) : ἔτι.  
 —, also : καί.  
 stomach : belly : ἡ γαστήρ (*exc.* in accent, § 76 (d)).  
 stone : ὁ λίθος.  
 stop : check (trv.) : παύω, κατέχω, ἐπέχω, (put an end to : διαλύω).  
 — cease (intr.) : παύομαι.  
 — (i. e. leave an interval) : διαλείπω.  
 — (the water clock) : ἐπιλαμβάνω (e. g. ἐπिलाβε τὸ ὕδωρ).  
 storm : winter : rain : ὁ χειμῶν, ὦνος, also *vide* S. V., No. 4.  
 —, wet weather : ἡ ἐπομβρία.  
 — (vb.) : χειμάζω, in pass. 'to be tempest-tossed.'  
 story : tale : ὁ λόγος.  
 stout : παχύς, εἶα, ὕ.

straight through (adv.): διαμπερές.

— up: ὀρθός, ἡ, ὄν.

straighten out: κατορθόω.

strange (adj.): wonderful: θαυμάσιος, α, ὄν.

stranger: ὁ ξένος.

strangle: ἀγχω.

street: ἡ ὁδός.

strength: prowess: ἡ ἀλκή. *Vide* 'valiant.'

stride along: go: βιβάω or βίβημι (H. and poet.).

strife: ἡ ἔρις, ἰδος, τὸ νείκος.

strike (vb.): παίω or τύπτω (in pres.); aor. ἐπάταξα (πατάσσω).

— (as lightning) κατασκήπτω.

— with terror: *vide* 'terrify.'

strip: strip off: ἀποδύω, ἐκδύω.

stroke: caress: καταψάω.

strong: καρτερός, α, ὄν, ἰσχυρός, α, ὄν.

stronghold: τὸ ἰσχυρὸν χωρίον.

Strymo: ἡ Στρυμώ.

subdue: master: κρατέω, gen.

such as: as great as: ὅσος, η, ὄν.

such (of what precedes): τοιοῦτος, τοιαύτη, τοιοῦτο.

— (of what follows): τοιόσδε, ἄδε, ὅνδε.

suddenly: all of a sudden: ἐξαίφνης.

suffer (pain): ἀλγέω.

—: to be affected: undergo: πάσχω. — distress: τάλαιπώρῃω.

— disaster: be unlucky: ἀτυχεῖω.

sugar-loafed: pointed: φοξός, ἡ, ὄν (H.).

sulky, to grow: ἀγανακτέω.

summer: early summer: *vide* S. V., No. 5.

summon: καλέω, μεταπέμπομαι.

call together: συγκαλέω, συλλέγω.

sun: sunlight: ὁ ἥλιος.

Sun-town: Ἡλίον πόλις.

— lit: use ἔχω and ἥλιος.

— set: ἡλίον δυσμαί.

sup: dine: δειπνέω.

support: rear (vb.): τρέφω.

suppose: οἶμαι, διανοέομαι.

surprise: come upon: καταλαμβάνω.

suspect: ὑποπτεύω, ὑφοράομαι (Lat. *suspicio*).

surely: use ἀλλά μὲν at head of clause.

surround: flow around: περιερίω.

swear: ὀμνυμι.

— falsely: ἐπιορκέω, acc.

sweetmeats: τὰ τραγήματα.

Swell-foot: ὁ Οἰδίπους, οδος.

swift: ταχύς, εἶα, ὕ, ὠκύς, εἶα, ὕ (poet.).

— footed: ὠκύπους, πουν (poet.).

swiftness: ἡ ταχυτής, ἦτος.

swine (hog, sow): ὁ (ἡ) ὄς, ὅς.

*Vide* S. V., No. 7.

sword: *vide* S. V., No. 6.

syllable: (ἡ συλλαβή), ἡ φωνή.

## T

table: ἡ τράπεζα.

tail: also 'rear of αἰσῶς': ἡ οὐρά.

- take : λαμβάνω.  
 — with : lead : ἄγω.  
 over — : καταλαμβάνω.  
 — hold of : ἐπιλαμβάνομαι, gen. ἄπτομαι or ἐφάπτομαι, gen.  
 — off, away, from : ἀφαιρέομαι.  
 — out : ἐξαιρέω. 'that may be taken out,' ἐξαιρετός, ἡ, ὄν.  
 — place : *vide* 'occur.'  
 — up : ἀναίρῶ.  
 taken, to be : captured : ἀλίσκομαι.  
 talk : λαλεῖν.  
 — with : διαλέγομαι.  
 —, to have a : εἰς λόγους ἐλθεῖν.  
 talkative : λάλος, (η) ον.  
 tall : *vide* 'large.'  
 tame : ἥμερος, ον.  
 Taochian : ὁ Τάοχος.  
 targeteer : *vide* S. V., Nò. 6.  
 Tartarus : ὁ Τάρταρος.  
 taste : γεύομαι, gen.  
 Tauri, the : οἱ Ταῦροι (ἐν Ταύροις, among the Taurians).  
 'taxis' : ἡ τάξις.  
 taxiarch : ὁ ταξίαρχος, *vide* L. & S.  
 teach : διδάσκω.  
 tear (sb) : τὸ δάκρυον.  
 tell : λέγω, εἶπον. — in detail : διέξειμι, διηγέομαι.  
 temple : ὁ νέωσ, ὦ (the sacred precinct, τὸ ἱερόν).  
 ten : δέκα.  
 tent (vb.) : σκηνοῶ.  
 tent (sb.) : ἡ σκηνή.  
 terrible : δεινός, ἡ, ὄν. extreme, ἔσχατος, η, ον.  
 terrify : φοβέω, καταπλήσσω, 2 aor. pass. καταπλάγη.  
 testimony : ἡ μαρτυρία.  
 than : gen. case alone ; or ἢ.  
 thank-offerings : τὰ χαριστήρια  
 that : *vide* § 11.  
 the : ὁ, ἡ, τό.  
 Thebes : αἱ Θῆβαι.  
 theft : ἡ κλοπή, accent, § 73 (II. 1).  
 their : *vide* § 9 ; often article with noun, *vide* § 3 (c).  
 them : *vide* § 9.  
 themselves : *vide* § 9.  
 then (time) : τότε.  
 — (sequence), secondly, ἔπειτα  
 δέ, then again τοῦτο δέ.  
 — (so then, therefore) † οὖν, † δὴ, † τοίνυν.  
 thence : from — : ἐκεῖθεν, αὐτόθεν.  
 there : ταύτη, ἐκεῖ.  
 thereafter : use ἔπειτα.  
 therefore : † οὖν, οὐκοῦν, † τοίνυν, διὰ ταῦτα, ὥστε.  
 thereupon : often turn freely, e. g. 'hearing this ;' or 'seeing this' or τότε δὴ.  
 Therites : ὁ Θεροσίτης.  
 they : *vide* § 9.  
 thickness (i. e. width) : τὸ εὖρος.  
 thigh : *vide* S. V., No. 1.  
 thin : scanty : σπάνιος, α, ον, ψεδνός, ἡ, ὄν (H.).  
 thing : usually expr. by neut. of adj., or τὸ χρῆμα.  
 think : οἶομαι, νομίζω, ἡγήομαι.  
 have in mind : ἐννοέομαι, 1 aor. pass. ἐννοήθην.  
 think it fitting : expect : ἀξιώω.  
 thirst : ἡ δίψα, τὸ δίψος.  
 thirty : τριάκοντα.  
 this : οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο, cf. § 9.  
 thither : ἐκεῖσε.

thole-strap: ὁ τροπός (√τρέπω, accent, § 74,1); ὁ τροπωτήρ, a twisted leathern thong by which the oar was fastened.

thou: σὺ.

thread: τὸ λίνον (esp. of Fates, H. and poet.).

threat: ἡ ἀπειλή.

threaten: ἀπειλέω.

three: τρεῖς, τρία.

— headed: τρικέφαλος, ον.

— thousand: τρισχίλιοι, αι, α.

through: by: from: ὑπό, gen.; partic. alone, § 15 (2).

— (space or time), διά, gen.

— (on account of, by reason of), διά, acc.

throw: βάλλω.

— aside: ἀπορρίπτω.

— around: περιβάλλω.

— down: pay down: κατατίθημι.

— one's self on: fall on: προσπίπτω.

thrown-down: fallen: πεσών, οὔσα, όν.

thumb: ὁ μέγας δάκτυλος.

thunder: vide S. V., No. 4.

— bolt: vide S. V., No. 4.

thus: so: οὕτω(s).

tiger: vide S. V., No. 7.

time: ὁ χρόνος. fitting time, ὁ καιρός. hour, ἡ ὥρα.

Tissaphernes: ὁ Τισσαφέρνης, ον, heterocl. 1st decl.

Titans: οἱ Τιτᾶνες.

Titurius: ὁ Τιτούριος.

to: into: towards: εἰς (§ 63, VIII.) παρά, πρὸς, all c. acc.

— (of persons only), ὡς.

to: up to: ἐπί, acc., also ἐπί, c. gen. of *object towards which*.

to, in order —: ἵνα, ὥς, ὅπως, § 36.

to-day: τήμερον, σήμερον (√ἡμέρα.)

toe: vide S. V., No. 1.

together: ἅμα, or *dative* alone, ὁμοῦ.

toil: πονέω. without—, ἄπονος, ον.

tomb: ὁ τάφος.

to-morrow: αὔριον, ἡ αὔριον.

tongue: language: ἡ γλῶσσα.

tooth: ὁ ὀδούς, δόντος.

top of: at the furthest end: ἄκρος, α, ον.

torch (later 'lamp'): ἡ λαμπάς, ἄδος.

torture (vb.): βασανίζω (i. e. examine by torture).

towards: vide 'to.'

tower: ὁ πύργος, ἡ τύρις.

town: to be in —: ἐπιδημέω.

—, to be out of: ἀποδημέω.

tragic-poet: ὁ τραγωδοποιός, poet and actor, τραγῳδός.

travel: to (to arrive): ἀφικνέομαι.

treat: affect: διατίθημι.

— so and so: use πράσσω.

tree: τὸ δένδρον. τὰ δένδρα 'fruit trees'; ἡ ὕλη, 'wood, timber.'

tremendous: use superl. of μέγας.

trial (judicial): ἡ δίκη, ἡ κρίσις.

triangle: τὸ τρίγωνον.

trip up (trv.): ἵπσοκελίζω (√σκέλος); (intr.): tumble,

fall: σφάλλομαι.

trouble: to give trouble: πράγματα παρέχειν.

troublesome: λυπηρός, ά, όν.



Troy : ἡ Τροία, τὸ Ἰλιον (also ἡ Ἰλιος).

true : ἀληθής, ἐς.

truly : ἀληθῶς or use τὰ ἀληθῆ.

trumpet : ἡ σάλπιγξ.

truth : ἡ ἀλήθεια. τὸ ἀληθές, τὰ ἀληθῆ.

try : πειράομαι or use imperf. of verb, cf. § 27.

tunic : ὁ χιτῶν, ὤνος.

turn (sb.) : part : τὸ μέρος, ἐν μέρει 'in turn.'

— (vb.) : τρέπω, στρέφω.

— about : to twist : διαστρέφω, 2 aor. pass. διεστράφη.

— around (intr.) : μεταστρέφομαι, 2 aor. pass. μετεστράφη.

— aside : ἐκτρέπω.

— into : *vide* 'make,' 'become.'

tusk : ὁ χαλιόδους, δοντός.

twelve : δώδεκα.

twenty : εἴκοσι.

twenty-five : εἴκοσι πέντε.

twenty-five men : a division of

— : ἡ ἐνωμοσία, but cf. L. & S.

twice : δις.

two : δύο.

typhoon : ὁ τυφῶς, ὦ.

## U

ugly : disgraceful : αἰσχροίς, ἄ, ὄν.

unable : tr. 'not able.'

unawares : use λανθάνω.

uncertain : ἄδηλος, ὄν.

uncle : *vide* S. V., No. 2.

uncover (one's head) : ἐκκαλύπτωμαι.

under (prep.) : ὑπό, gen. (also c. acc.).

—, below (adv.) : κάτω.

underground : κατὰγειος, ὄν, ὑπόγειος, ὄν.

undermine : dig through : τοιχωρυνχέω, διορύσσω.

understand : ἐπίσταμαι.

unfortunate : κακοδαίμων, ὄν.

unjust : ἀδικος, ὄν.

unjustly : ἀδίκως.

unlawful : use οὐ and θέμις.

unless : εἰ μή.

unluckily : δυστυχῶς.

unnoticed, to be : to escape attention : use λανθάνω c. acc.

unnumbered : ἀναρίθμητος, ὄν.

unoccupied : empty : κενός, ἡ, ὄν.

until (prep.) : μέχρι, gen.

— (conj.) : ἕως, μέχρι, ἕστε (ἄν); also after neg. (οὐ) πρίν, *vide* § 51 (a).

unwilling, to be : οὐκ ἐθέλειν.

up to this : εἰς τοῦτο.

upon : ἐπί, dat., gen. (gen. regularly in some phrases); ἐν, dat.

upper (adv.) : ἄνω.

upper story : *vide* S. V., No. 3.

urge : claim : ἀξιῶ.

urge on : encourage : παραμυθεῖσθαι.

us : *vide* § 9.

use : χράσθαι, dat.

useful : χρήσιμος, (η), ὄν.

usually : (ὥς) ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ.

utter (send a sound) : ἔφη· scream : κλάζω (poet.). *Vide* 'scream.'

## V

vacant : empty : κενός, ἡ, ὄν.  
 vain, in : μάτην.  
 valiant : strong : ἄλκιμος, (η),  
 ον.  
 varied : of all sorts : παντοῖος,  
 α, ον.  
 vault (sb.) : ὁ κύκλος (τοῦ οὐρα-  
 νοῦ).  
 vein : *vide* S. V., No. 1.  
 vengeance, to take : *vide*  
 'avenge.'  
 verses : τὰ ἔπη.  
 very : often use superl. of adj.  
 or adv. ; also πάνν, μάλα, μά-  
 λιστα, λίαν, σφόδρα.  
 viand : *vide* 'relish.'  
 victorious : use pf. ptc. of νικάω.  
 victory : *vide* S. V., No. 6.  
 views (i. e. opinion or plan) : ἡ  
 ἐπίνοια.  
 vine : ἡ ἀμπelos.  
 violence : ἡ βία. by — : πρὸς  
 βίαν, or βία.  
 Virgil : ὁ Οὐεργίλιος, or Βεργίλιος.  
 visit (i. e. to come to) : ἀφικνέο-  
 μαι, προσέρχομαι.  
 voice : ἡ φωνή.  
 voluntarily : use ἐθέλων, or ἐκῶν  
 ἐκούσα, ἐκόν.  
 vow (not to), to (vb.) : use σὺ φημι.  
 voyage : ὁ πλοῦς.  
 vulture : ὁ γύψ, γυπός.

## W

wagon : ἡ ἄμαξα.  
 wall : *dirge* : ὁ θρήνος.

wait for : expect : ἐλπίζω, ἀνα-  
 μένω.  
 walk : βαδίζω. go : εἶμι. travel :  
 ὁδοιπορέω.  
 — about : περιπατέω, περιέιμι,  
 περιέρχομαι.  
 — along : βαδίζω.  
 wall : *vide* S. V., No. 3 : ὁ τοῖ-  
 χος.  
 wall off : ἀποτεριχίζω. wall  
 around : περιτοιχοδομέω.  
 want : *vide* 'wish,' 'need.'  
 wanting, to be : ἀπείναι, δεῖν.  
 war (sb.) : ὁ πόλεμος.  
 to wage — against (vb.) : προσ-  
 πολεμέω, dat.  
 warm : θερμός, ἡ, ὄν, ἀλεωνός, ἡ, ὄν.  
 watch : τηρέω.  
 water : τὸ ὕδωρ, ὕδατος.  
 way (road) : ἡ ὁδός.  
 — (manner) : ὁ τρόπος.  
 wear away : rub out : ἐκτρίβω.  
 weave : ὑφαίνω.  
 week : say 'seven days (and  
 seven nights).'  
 weep : δακρύω.  
 weight : τὸ βάρος.  
 well (sb.) : τὸ φρέαρ, ἄγος.  
 — (adv.) : εὖ, καλῶς. justly :  
 δικαίως.  
 —, to be : εὖ ἔχειν.  
 —, to fare : εὖ πράττειν.  
 —! (excl.), or 'well! but'),  
 often in transitions at head of  
 clause : ἀλλά.  
 well-broken : χειροῖθης, es (exc.  
 accent, *vide* § 79.  
 western (of evening) : in the  
 west : Ἑσπέριος, α, ον, Ἑσπερος,  
 ον.

**wet:** (vb.): βρέχω.  
**what's more:** καὶ δὴ καί.  
**what sort of?** (inter.): ποῖος; α; ον;  
**what sort** (rel.): οἷος, α, ον.  
**wheel:** ὁ τροχός (√τρέχω); accent, § 74.  
**wheel-shaped:** τροχοειδής, ἐς.  
**when** (temporal): *vide* § 51.  
   use participle, or ὅτε, ἐπεί, etc., often gen. absolute.  
   — *ever:* ὅταν, ἐπὶν, etc. w. subj., or ὅτε, etc., w. opt., § 51 (b).  
   — ? (inter.): πότε;  
**where** (rel.): ὅπου, οὖ, ἐν ᾧ.  
   — ? (inter.): ποῦ;  
**whether?** (inter. adj.): **whether** of two? πότερος; α; ον;  
   — ? (inter. adv.): πότερον;  
   — (indirect): εἰ. **whether** . . . or, εἴτε . . . εἴτε.  
**while** (temporal): gen. abs. or *vide* § 51.  
   — (but): †δέ.  
   little —: use μικροῦ δέιν.  
**whirl aloft:** μετεωρίζω.  
   — around: *vide* 'turn around'; curling around (as smoke): ἐλίσσομαι (H. and poet.).  
**whither:** ὅποι.  
**who? which? what?** (inter.): τίς; τί;  
   — (indirect): ὅστις ἦτις, ὅτι.  
   — (relative): ὅς, ἥ, ὃ.  
   — *ever:* ὅστις, ἦτις, ὅτι.  
**whole:** ὅλος, η, ον.  
**why?** τί; διὰ τί;  
**why!** (excl.): ἀλλά.  
**winked:** roguish: πανούργος, ον.  
**winter-shield:** τὸ γέρρον.

**widely** (i. e. much): πολύ.  
**width:** τὸ εὖρος.  
**wife:** ἡ γυνή, γυναῖκός.  
**wild:** ἄγριος, α, ον.  
**wild-beast:** ὁ θήρ, θηρός.  
**will:** desire (vb.): ἐθέλω, βούλομαι.  
   — decree (sb.): τὸ δόγμα, τὸ θέλημα (Arist. & N. T.).  
**wind:** ὁ ἄνεμος, τὸ πνεῦμα (also 'breath, spirit').  
**window:** *vide* S. V., No. 3.  
   ἡ θυρίς, ἶδος  
**wine:** ὁ οἶνος.  
**wing:** ἡ πτέρυξ, υγος: *vide* S. V., No. 8.  
   — of army: *vide* S. V., No. 6.  
**winter:** storm: ὁ χειμῶν, ὦνος: *vide* S. V., No. 5.  
**wintry:** χειμέριος (α), ον.  
**wise:** φρόνιμος (η), ον, σοφός, ἡ, ον.  
**wish** (vb.): βούλομαι, ἐθέλω.  
**witch-craft:** juggling: ἡ γοητεία.  
**with:** use dat. alone, or, μετά c. gen., ἅμα, σὺν (Xen. and poet.).  
   — (near): παρά, dat.  
   — (having): use ἔχων, λαβών, φέρων: *vide* § 15 (3).  
**withdraw:** go away: ἀπέναι.  
**within** (adv.): ἐνδον, ἐντός (adv. or prep. c. gen.).  
   from —: ἐνδοθεν.  
**without:** ἄνευ (gen.): or, οὐκ ἔχων.  
   — trouble: ἀπραγμόνως.  
**witness** (person): ὁ μάρτυς, υρος.  
   — (testimony): ἡ μαρτυρία.

wolf: *ὁ λύκος*.  
 woman: *ἡ γυνή, ναϊκός*.  
 women's apartments: *vide* S. V., No. 3.  
 wonder (sb.): *τὸ θαῦμα*.  
 wonderful: *θαυμάσιος, α, ον*.  
 wood: *τὸ ξύλον*.  
 —: forest: timber: *ἡ ὕλη*.  
 wooden: *ξύλινος, (η), ον*.  
 word: *τὸ ἔπος*.  
 articulate —: voice: *ἡ φωνή*.  
 work: *τὸ ἔργον*.  
 workshop: *τὸ ἐργαστήριον*.  
 world: universe: *vide* S. V., No. 4.  
 worn out, to be: use *ἀπειρηκώς, υῖα, ὅς*, from *ἀπείπον*.  
 worst: *vide* 'bad.'  
 worth: worthy of: *ἄξιος, α, ον*, c. gen.  
 — mention: *ἀξιόλογος, ον*.  
 — seeing: *ἀξιοθέατος, ον*.  
 wound (vb.): *τιτρώσκω*.  
 — (sb.): *τὸ ἔλκος, τὸ τραῦμα*.  
 wretched (adj.), (as sb. = 'poor wretch'): *ταλαίπωρος, ον*.  
 write: *γράφω*.  
 writing (sb.): *τὸ γράμμα*.  
 writer: author: historian: *ὁ συγγραφεύς, ὁ λογογράφος* (= also 'speech-writer').  
 wrong-doing (injury): *τὸ ἀδίκημα*. (error): *τὸ ἀμάρτημα*.

## X


Xanthias: *ὁ Ξανθίας*.  
 Xenophon: *ὁ Ξενοφών, ὦντος*.  
 Xerxes: *ὁ Ξέρξης*.

## Y

year: *τὸ ἔτος, ὁ ἐνιαυτός*.  
 yearly: *κατὰ ἔτος*.  
 yes: *ναί*.  
 'yes, but': use *ἀλλά*.  
 yet (still): *ἔτι*.  
 —: *vide* 'nevertheless.'  
 yoke (vb.): to put under the —: *ὑποζεύγνυμι*.  
 you: *vide* 'thou,' § 9.  
 young: *τὸ τέκνον* (*√ τίκτω*) (nestling from egg, *ὁ νεοσσός*).  
 — man: youth: *ὁ νεανίας, ὁ νεανίσκος*. Accent, § 74 (5).  
 your: (thine, *σός, σή, σόν*. your, *ὁμέτερος, α, ον*).

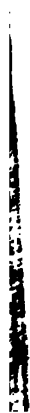
## Z

Zeno: *ὁ Ζήνων, ὠνος*.  
 Zenophilus: *ὁ Ζηνοφίλος*.  
 Zeus: *Ζεύς, Διός*.

 The genitive of nouns in *ης* (*as*) is not indicated in the first declension.

The genitive of nouns in *is* is not indicated when it is *εως*.

The genitive of nouns in *ων, ωρ, ην*, etc. (liquid stems of 3d decl.), is not indicated unless the vowel is long in the stem.



Introduction Prices.

November, 1889.

PUBLICATIONS OF

**ALLYN AND BACON,**

*364, WASHINGTON STREET, BOSTON.*

JOHN ALLYN.

GEO. A. BACON.

---

**NEW BOOKS.**

**BRANDT, H. C. G.** German Reader for Beginners, with Notes and complete Vocabulary. 12mo, 400 pages. \$1.25.

The extracts are divided into six sections: Easy Prose; Easy Poetry; Legends and Tales; Songs and Lyrics; Comedy; Historical Prose. The aim of the editor has been to present selections of carefully graded difficulty no less than of real intrinsic value, and to prepare a book which shall be thoroughly attractive and useful.

**GRADATIM**, a First Latin Reader, containing interesting and carefully graded Stories. Edited, with Vocabulary, by J. W. SCUDDER, Albany Academy. 16mo. 50 cents.

This book is based on an English publication of the same title, and, by the addition of other material illustrating further points of syntax, is made a more adequate preparation for Cæsar.

**GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION.** By FRANCIS G. ALLINSON, Ph.D., University School, Baltimore. 16mo. \$1.20.

**SCHILLER'S** Der Neffe als Onkel. Edited, with Notes and Vocabulary, by Professor C. F. RADDATZ, Baltimore City College. 16mo. 50 cents.

**XENOPHON'S ANABASIS.** Books I-IV. Illustrated edition, with colored Plates, Map, Plans, Notes, and Vocabulary, by Professor FRANCIS W. KELSEY. 12mo. \$1.60.

## LATIN TEXT BOOKS.

(SEE PAGES 5-9.)

<b>Abbott, E. A.</b>	Latin Prose through English Idiom . . . . .	\$0.90
<b>Bennett, G. L.</b>	Easy Latin Stories . . . . .	.70
	First Latin Writer . . . . .	.90
	First Latin Exercises . . . . .	.70
	Second Latin Writer . . . . .	.90
<b>Champlin, J. T.</b>	Selections from Tacitus . . . . .	1.10
<b>Chase, R. H.</b>	Maclean's Horace . . . . .	1.30
<b>Comstock, D. Y.</b>	First Latin Book . . . . .	1.00
<b>Gradatim.</b>	Edited by J. W. Scudder . . . . .	.50
<b>Hart, Samuel.</b>	Satires of Juvenal . . . . .	1.10
	Satires of Persius . . . . .	.75
	Scipio's Dream . . . . .	.20
<b>Holbrooke, G. O.</b>	Pliny's Letters . . . . .	1.00
<b>Kelsey, F. W.</b>	Cæsar's Gallic War . . . . .	1.25
	Cicero de Amicitia . . . . .	.70
	de Senectute . . . . .	.70
	Amicitia and Senectute in one vol. . . . .	1.20
	Orations. <i>In preparation</i> . . . . .	0.00
	Lucretius . . . . .	1.75
	Selections from Ovid. <i>In preparation</i> . . . . .	0.00
<b>Maclean, A. J.</b>	Horace. Edited by Chase . . . . .	1.30
	Juvenal. Edited by Hart . . . . .	1.10
<b>Morris, E. P.</b>	Mostellaria of Plautus . . . . .	1.00
<b>Pennell, R. F.</b>	The Latin Subjunctive . . . . .	.25
<b>Scudder, J. W.</b>	Gradatim, a First Latin Reader . . . . .	.50
<b>Smith, E. H.</b>	Latin Selections . . . . .	1.75
<b>Stickney, A.</b>	Cicero pro Cluentio . . . . .	.80

**GREEK TEXT BOOKS.**

(SEE PAGES 10-15.)

<b>Allinson, F. G.</b>	Greek Prose Composition . . . . .	\$1.20
<b>Felton, C. C.</b>	Aristophanes' Birds . . . . .	1.10
	Clouds . . . . .	1.10
	Isocrates' Panegyricus . . . . .	.80
	Modern Greek Writers . . . . .	1.25
<b>Fernald, O. M.</b>	Selections from Greek Historians . . . . .	1.50
<b>Frost, W. G.</b>	Alpha, A Greek Primer . . . . .	1.00
<b>Jebb, R. C.</b>	The Ajax of Sophocles . . . . .	1.10
<b>Keep, Robert P.</b>	Homer's Iliad. Books I.-VI. . . . .	1.40
	With Vocabulary . . . . .	1.60
	Books I.-III. . . . .	.90
	With Vocabulary . . . . .	1.20
<b>Kelsey, F. W.</b>	Xenophon's Anabasis. Books I.-IV. . . . .	1.60
<b>Mather, R. H.</b>	Prometheus of Æschylus . . . . .	1.00
	Herodotus and Thucydides. . . . .	.90
	Electra of Sophocles . . . . .	1.10
<b>Moss, Charles M.</b>	First Greek Reader . . . . .	.70
<b>Sewall, J. B.</b>	Greek Conditional Sentences . . . . .	.18
<b>Thurber, S.</b>	Vocabulary to Iliad, I.-VI. . . . .	.50
<b>Tyler, W. S.</b>	Demosthenes de Corona . . . . .	1.20
	Olynthiacs . . . . .	.70
	Philippics . . . . .	.80
	Olynthiacs and Philippics in one vol. . . . .	1.20
<b>Wagner, Wm.</b>	Plato's Apology and Crito . . . . .	.90
	Phædo . . . . .	1.20
<b>Williams, C. R.</b>	Lucian, Selections . . . . .	1.40
	Short Extracts . . . . .	.80
<b>Winans, S. R.</b>	Xenophon's Memorabilia . . . . .	1.20
	Symposium . . . . .	.50



## MODERN LANGUAGES.

(SEE PAGES 16-19.)

<b>Brandt, H. C. G.</b>	<b>First German Book</b> . . . . .	<b>\$1.00</b>
	<b>German Grammar</b> . . . . .	<b>1.25</b>
	<b>German Reader</b> . . . . .	<b>1.25</b>
<b>Chardenal, C. A.</b>	<b>First French Course</b> . . . . .	<b>.60</b>
	<b>Second French Course</b> . . . . .	<b>.60</b>
	<b>Advanced Exercises</b> . . . . .	<b>.90</b>
<b>Lodeman, A.</b>	<b>German Exercises</b> . . . . .	<b>.50</b>
<b>Raddatz, C. F.</b>	<b>Der Neffe als Onkel</b> . . . . .	<b>.50</b>

## HISTORY AND PHILOSOPHY.

(SEE PAGES 20-22.)

<b>Bowen, Francis.</b>	<b>Hamilton's Metaphysics</b> . . . . .	<b>1.50</b>
	<b>Treatise on Logic</b> . . . . .	<b>1.25</b>
<b>Champlin, J. T.</b>	<b>Constitution of the United States</b> . . . . .	<b>.80</b>
<b>Pennell, R. F.</b>	<b>History of Greece</b> . . . . .	<b>.60</b>
	<b>History of Rome</b> . . . . .	<b>.60</b>
<b>Tocqueville, A. de.</b>	<b>American Institutions</b> . . . . .	<b>1.20</b>
	<b>Democracy in America, 2 vols.</b> . . . . .	<b>4.00</b>

## SCIENCE AND MATHEMATICS.

(SEE PAGES 23, 24.)

<b>Cooke, J. P.</b>	<b>Chemical Philosophy</b> . . . . .	<b>3.50</b>
	<b>Chemical Physics</b> . . . . .	<b>4.50</b>
<b>MacDonald, J. W.</b>	<b>Principles of Plane Geometry</b> . . . . .	<b>.30</b>
<b>Nelson, E. T.</b>	<b>Herbarium and Plant Descriptions</b> . . . . .	<b>.75</b>
<b>Sharples, S. P.</b>	<b>Chemical Tables</b> . . . . .	<b>2.00</b>
<b>Taylor, J. M.</b>	<b>College Algebra</b> . . . . .	<b>0.00</b>
<b>Walker, J.</b>	<b>Anatomy, Physiology, and Hygiene</b> . . . . .	<b>1.20</b>
<b>Worthington, A. M.</b>	<b>Physical Laboratory Practice</b> . . . . .	<b>1.25</b>

## GREEK TEXT BOOKS.

**Æschylus, Prometheus Bound.** Edited by Professor R. H. MATHER, Amherst College. With the lyric parts arranged according to the system of Schmidt. Second Edition. 16mo, cloth, 180 pages. \$1.00.

Prof. N. L. Andrews, *Madison University, N.Y.*—I have examined with great care Professor Mather's edition of the Prometheus. The notes are well adapted to the literary appreciation of the play; and the Introduction, with its graphic and interesting sketch of the representation of Greek dramas, is a valuable feature. I shall adopt it for use with my classes.

Prof. T. L. Seip, *Muhlenberg College, Pa.*—The Introduction is very valuable to the student, and meets a want seldom supplied in similar works. The article on the lyric parts, and the metrical scheme, furnish in concise form much-needed information. The text is very good, and the notes are a satisfactory aid for beginners in Greek Tragedy.

**Aristophanes, Acharnians and Knights.** Edited by W. C. GREEN, M.A., late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge. (*Catena Classicorum.*) 12mo, 210 pages. \$1.20.

The text of this edition is mainly that of Dindorf. In the notes brevity has been studied, as short notes are more likely to be read, and, therefore, to be useful. Each play is preceded by an Introduction and an Argument.

**Aristophanes, Birds.** With Notes, by C. C. FELTON, LL.D., President of Harvard University. Third Edition, revised by W. W. GOODWIN, Eliot Professor of Greek Literature in Harvard University. 12mo, 250 pages. \$1.10.

**Aristophanes, Clouds.** With Notes, by C. C. FELTON, LL.D. New Edition, revised. 12mo, 250 pages. \$1.10.

President Felton, by his tastes and his studies, was especially fitted for the difficult task of editing Aristophanes, and the notes of these two books show with what skill and thoroughness the congenial labor has been performed. Great care has been taken to explain the judicial expressions and the frequent allusions to the political and social life of Athens. In the new editions the commentary has been enlarged by references to Goodwin's *Moods and Tenses of the Greek Verb.*

**Lucian, Selections.** With Introductions and Notes by Professor CHARLES R. WILLIAMS, Lake Forest University. Second Edition. 16mo, 340 pages. \$1.40.

—— **Short Extracts.** Edited by Professor CHARLES R. WILLIAMS. 16mo, 180 pages. \$0.80.

THE SHORT EXTRACTS contain The Dream, Timon, and seventeen Dialogues. The SELECTIONS include the same matter, together with Charon, The Cock, and Icaromenippus.

Prof. J. E. Goodrich, *University of Vermont*. — These Dialogues of Lucian are just the thing for rapid reading or for reading at sight. Lucian is so alert, so keen, and withal so modern in feeling and temper, that the student is driven to read on and on, just to see how the witty debate will end. I am glad to see that Professor Williams has furnished an edition which will fully meet the demands of the class-room.

Prof. Henry M. Baird, *University of the City of New York*. — A convenient edition of Lucian has long been needed. The want has now been met by Professor Williams's industry and scholarship, and I have no doubt that the book will be duly appreciated. The editor has collected in his introduction all that is most essential for the student to know respecting the author of the dialogues and respecting the dialogues themselves; while the notes show a most judicious choice between the extremes of too great fullness and barrenness of illustration. The typography and external appearance are unexceptionable.

**Moss's First Greek Reader.** With Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary, by Professor CHARLES M. MOSS, Wesleyan University, Illinois. 16mo, 151 pages. 70 cents.

It is the aim of the author to furnish a Greek book for beginners which shall be simple and interesting, and at the same time contain a large number of such words, phrases, and idioms as are of frequent occurrence in Attic Greek. There has for some time been a demand for such a book, to precede the Anabasis, which is of uneven difficulty, and which is quite apt, when read slowly by a beginner, to grow very tedious.

The book contains no disconnected sentences. It consists of a series of carefully graduated exercises for translation, beginning with the simplest stories, and ending with extracts from Xenophon, Herodotus, and Lucian, which have been changed and adapted to the knowledge of the beginner. The text is preceded by valuable hints on translation, and followed by notes and a complete vocabulary.

It is believed that the time spent in reading this book, before taking up any Greek author for consecutive study, will be more than saved in the subsequent rapid progress of the pupil.

**Plato's Apology of Socrates and Crito.** With Notes, critical and exegetical, and a logical Analysis of the Apology, by W. WAGNER, Ph.D. Revised Edition. 16mo, 145 pages. \$0.90.

The text of this edition is based on that of the Bodleian MS., and is claimed to be the most correct text extant. Throughout the work, the editor's aim has been to be as brief and concise as possible, not attempting originality, but carefully using and arranging the materials amassed by preceding commentators. In the revised edition, some references to parallel passages have been omitted, and extended references to American grammars have been added.

Prof. F. D. Allen, *Harvard College*. — I am glad you have republished the book, which, I think, will be useful in this country. The work, like others of Wagner, abounds in original and sensible remarks; the notes are to the point, and tersely expressed.

Prof. H. Whitehorne, *Union College, Schenectady*. — I confidently recommend it to the favorable consideration of all students. It is eminently scholarly without any parade of scholarship, and gives all the requisite information without removing from the student the necessity for using his own brains.

**Plato's Phædo.** With Notes, critical and exegetical, and an Analysis. By WILHELM WAGNER, Ph.D. 16mo, 206 pp. \$1.20.

This edition enters especially into the critical and grammatical explanation of the Phædo, and does not profess to exhaust the philosophical thought of the work, least of all to collect the doctrines and tenets of later philosophers and thinkers on the subjects treated by Plato.

Prof. Ch. Morris, *Randolph Macon College, Virginia*. — I have now in use, with my higher classes, your edition of the Phædo of Plato, and find it altogether satisfactory. It shows much greater care and scholarship than is usually found in college text-books.

Prof. J. Cooper, *Rutgers College, New Jersey*. — The edition of Plato's Phædo, by Wagner, is one of rare excellence. Seldom, if ever, has there been so much of value in a text-book compressed in so small a space.

**Sophocles, the Ajax.** Edited by R. C. JEBB, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. (*Catena Classicorum*.) 12mo, 206 pages. \$1.10.

Mr. Jebb has produced a work which will be read with interest and profit, as it contains, in a compact form, not only a careful summary of the labors of preceding editors, but also many acute and ingenious original remarks. All questions of grammar, construction, and philology are handled, as they arise, with a helpful and sufficient precision. An exhaustive introduction precedes the play.

**Lucian, Selections.** With Introductions and Notes by Professor CHARLES R. WILLIAMS, Lake Forest University. Second Edition. 16mo, 340 pages. \$1.40.

---

**Short Extracts.** Edited by Professor CHARLES R. WILLIAMS. 16mo, 180 pages. \$0.80.

The SHORT EXTRACTS contain The Dream, Timon, and seventeen Dialogues. The SELECTIONS include the same matter, together with Charon, The Cock, and Icaromenippus.

Prof. J. E. Goodrich, *University of Vermont*. — These Dialogues of Lucian are just the thing for rapid reading or for reading at sight. Lucian is so alert, so keen, and withal so modern in feeling and temper, that the student is driven to read on and on, just to see how the witty debate will end. I am glad to see that Professor Williams has furnished an edition which will fully meet the demands of the class-room.

Prof. Henry M. Baird, *University of the City of New York*. — A convenient edition of Lucian has long been needed. The want has now been met by Professor Williams's industry and scholarship, and I have no doubt that the book will be duly appreciated. The editor has collected in his introduction all that is most essential for the student to know respecting the author of the dialogues and respecting the dialogues themselves; while the notes show a most judicious choice between the extremes of too great fullness and barrenness of illustration. The typography and external appearance are unexceptionable.

**Moss's First Greek Reader.** With Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary, by Professor CHARLES M. MOSS, Wesleyan University, Illinois. 16mo, 151 pages. 70 cents.

It is the aim of the author to furnish a Greek book for beginners which shall be simple and interesting, and at the same time contain a large number of such words, phrases, and idioms as are of frequent occurrence in Attic Greek. There has for some time been a demand for such a book, to precede the Anabasis, which is of uneven difficulty, and which is quite apt, when read slowly by a beginner, to grow very tedious.

The book contains no disconnected sentences. It consists of a series of carefully graduated exercises for translation, beginning with the simplest stories, and ending with extracts from Xenophon, Herodotus, and Lucian, which have been changed and adapted to the knowledge of the beginner. The text is preceded by valuable hints on translation, and followed by notes and a complete vocabulary.

*It is believed that the time spent in reading this book, before taking up any Greek author for consecutive study, will be more than saved in the subsequent rapid progress of the pupil.*

# KEEP'S HOMER'S ILIAD.

WITH AN INTRODUCTION AND NOTES

BY

ROBERT P. KEEP, PH. D.,

PRINCIPAL OF NORWICH FREE ACADEMY, CONN.

---

**BOOKS I-VI. With a fac-simile of a page of the Venetian Manuscript of the Iliad. 12mo. 364 pages. \$1.40.**

**BOOKS I-III. Without the fac-simile. 12mo. 216 pages. 90 cents.**

---

In this work much labor has been bestowed upon the introductory matter, which constitutes a distinctive feature of the book. It contains an Essay upon the Origin, History, and Transmission of the Homeric Poems, giving in the form of a connected narrative full explanation in regard to the Iomeric question; an Essay on Scanning, which presents the subject in a simple, untechnical way, and illustrates the Homeric verse by the aid of English hexameters; and a concise yet complete Sketch of the Homeric Dialect. The Notes have been made quite full, and aim to supply that collateral information so much needed in the study of Homer. References are made to the Greek Grammars of Hadley (Allen's new edition) and Goodwin.

A very attractive feature of the Six-Book edition is a perfect fac-simile of a page of the famous Venetian Manuscript of the Iliad, — the best manuscript of Homer and one of the finest of all existing manuscripts.

No pains have been spared to make these the best-equipped and the most useful editions of the Iliad which can be put into the hands of a pupil, and they are almost universally accepted, not only as the best school editions in the English language of any part of Homer, but also as text-books of altogether exceptional merit.

**Sophocles, the Electra.** With Notes by R. C. JEBB. Revised and edited, with additional Notes, by R. H. MATHER, Professor of Greek in Amherst College. 16mo, 232 pages. \$1.10.

Prof. W. W. Goodwin, *Harvard College*. — It is rare to find an edition of a classic author so admirably adapted to the wants of students as Mr. Jebb's "Electra." I hope this new edition will aid in making it better known in our colleges.

**Thucydides.** The History of the War between the Peloponnesians and the Athenians. Books I. and II. Edited, with Notes and Introduction, by CHARLES BIGG, M.A., Christ Church, Oxford. (*Catena Classicorum*.) 12mo, 360 pages. \$1.60.

Mr. Bigg prefixes an Analysis to each book, and an admirable introduction to the whole work, containing full information as to all that is known or related of Thucydides, and the date at which he wrote, followed by a very masterly critique on some of his characteristics as a writer. — *London Athenæum*.

**Xenophon's Memorabilia.** With Introduction and Notes, by Professor SAMUEL ROSS WINANS, College of New Jersey. 16mo, 289 pages. \$1.20.

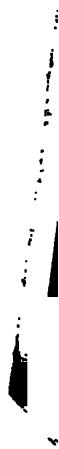
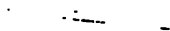
The text is separated into convenient divisions by English summaries, which take the place of the customary argument prefixed to the chapters, and put a logical analysis of the text where it cannot escape the attention of the student. The notes are designedly compact, yet are believed to contain all that is practically useful to the student. The editor has endeavored to supply brief sketches of everything of biographical, historical, or philosophical interest.

Prof. A. C. Merriam, *Columbia College, New York*. — It supplies a want long felt, and I have no doubt will be largely used, as it deserves. The introduction of the summaries into the text adds greatly to its value, while the notes are succinct, with good references and apt illustrations.

Prof. C. M. Moss, *Wesleyan University, Illinois*. — The notes are excellent, the paragraphing of the text is a great and valuable help to students, and the book itself is a model of neatness. It is one of the few unexceptionably well-edited school-books in my library. I shall use it in my classes exclusively when we read the "Memorabilia."

**Xenophon's Symposium.** Edited, with Notes, by Professor S. R. WINANS. 18mo, cloth, 96 pages. \$0.50.

The "Symposium," according to its original design, makes a delightful afterpiece to the "Memorabilia." As a source of information on *Attic morals and manners* its value is not easily overestimated; and its lively *conversational style* enables the student to appreciate Greek idiom and enjoy the spirit of the language.





## MOSS'S FIRST GREEK READER.

With Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary, by Professor CHARLES M. Moss, Wesleyan University, Illinois. 16mo, 160 pages. Revised edition. 70 cents.

It is the aim of the author to furnish a Greek book for beginners which shall be simple and interesting, and at the same time contain a large number of such words, phrases, and idioms as are of frequent occurrence in Attic Greek. There has for some time been a demand for such a book, to precede the *Anabasis*, which is of uneven difficulty, and which is quite apt, when read slowly by a beginner, to grow very tedious.

The book contains no disconnected sentences. It consists of a series of carefully graduated exercises for translation, beginning with the simplest stories, and ending with extracts adapted from Xenophon, Herodotus, and Lucian. The text is preceded by valuable hints on translation, and followed by notes and a complete vocabulary.

It is believed that the time spent in reading this book, before taking up any Greek author for consecutive study, will be more than saved in the subsequent rapid progress of the pupil.

This book was on publication immediately adopted for use in : —

Phillips Exeter Academy ; St. Paul's School, Concord, N. H.  
Roxbury Latin School, Boston ; Academy at Worcester, Mass.  
Lawrenceville School, N. J. ; Webb's Classical School, Tenn. ;

In the preparatory departments of : —

Muhlenberg, Geneva, and Swarthmore Colleges, Pa.  
Oberlin and Adelbert Colleges and Wooster University, Ohio.  
State University and Hanover College, Indiana.  
Lake Forest University and Ewing College, Illinois.  
State University and Ripon College, Wisconsin ;

In the High Schools of : —

Bangor, Me. ; Portsmouth and Dover, N. H.  
Fall River, Mass. ; Binghamton, New York.  
Newark, N. J. ; Washington, D. C. ;

In the Normal Schools at : —

Cortland and Geneseo, N. Y. ; Normal, Ill. ;

and in many other seminaries of high standing

MS.  
Lm  
70



1. The first part of the document is a list of names and addresses of the members of the committee.



THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY  
REFERENCE DEPARTMENT

**This book is under no circumstances to be  
taken from the Building**

[illegible]



